



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

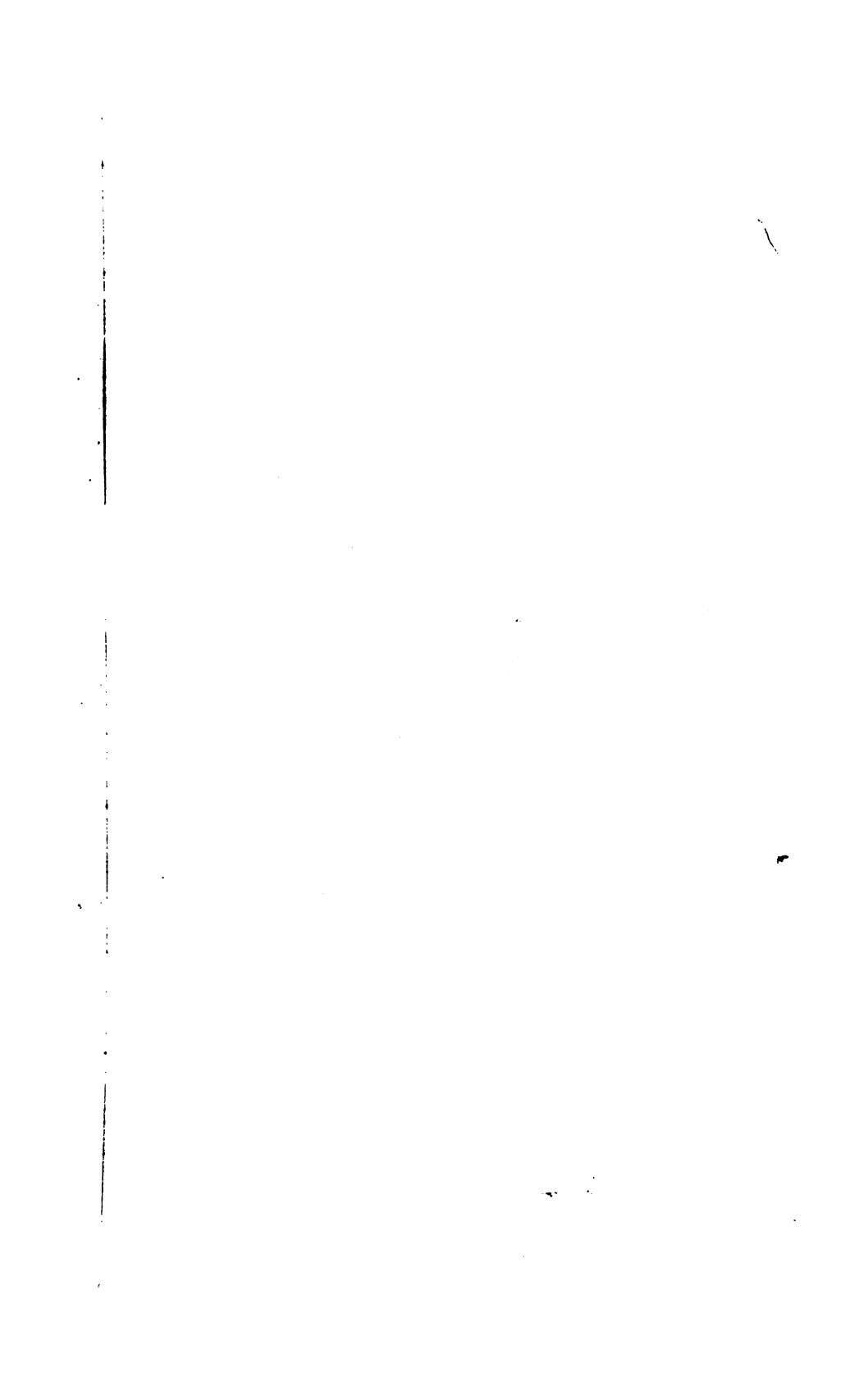
About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>





STANFORD UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES





STANFORD UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES



Sumita, 4. 11. 11, 2. 12. 11, 11

r

+

1000 +

BY

1903.

820.6
E12 e

YMA 1
ROMAN. ORC. 200A. B. 1
YMA 1

Extra Series, LXXXVIII.

RICHARD CLAY & SONS, LIMITED, LONDON AND BUNGAY.

122456

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION :							PAGE
§ 1. MANUSCRIPT AND EDITIONS	...	...	...	...	...	...	vii
§ 2. SOURCES	...	...	...	...	...	...	xiii
§ 3. DIALECT AND DATE	...	...	...	...	...	...	xx
§ 4. METRE...	...	...	...	...	...	...	xxv
§ 5. AUTHORSHIP	...	...	...	...	...	...	xxvii
§ 6. STYLE	...	...	...	...	...	...	xxix
LE MORTE ARTHUR	...	...	...	...	...	...	1
NOTES	...	...	...	...	...	...	122
EDITIONS OF MIDDLE ENGLISH TEXTS REFERRED TO IN THE							
NOTES	...	...	...	...	...	...	135
GLOSSARY	...	...	...	...	...	...	137
INDEX OF NAMES	...	...	...	...	...	...	147

INTRODUCTION.

§ 1. <i>Manuscript and Editions</i> , p. vii.	§ 4. <i>Metre</i> , p. xxv.
§ 2. <i>Sources</i> , p. xiii.	§ 5. <i>Authorship</i> , p. xxvii.
§ 3. <i>Dialect and Date</i> , p. xx.	§ 6. <i>Style</i> , p. xxix.

§ 1. MANUSCRIPT AND EDITIONS.

THE metrical romance 'Le Morte Arthur,' as far as is known, exists only in the British Museum MS., Harley 2252, in which MS. it occupies leaves 86-133, back. In Ward's 'Catalogue of Romances,' I, 405, the portion of this MS. which contains our romance is assigned to the late fifteenth century, being the work of two scribes of approximately the same date. The hand-writing of the first of these scribes, who is moreover the scribe of the romance known as 'Ipomedon B.' contained in the same MS., extends only as far as the bottom of leaf 101, back. In these first sixteen leaves, there are from thirty to thirty-six lines to the page, whereas in the remaining portion the lines run from thirty-nine to forty-six to a page. As has been remarked by Ward, the MS. contains besides 'Le Morte Arthur' and 'Ipomedon B.' various miscellanies in a later hand, the most interesting of which consist of poems by Skelton and others. This later hand is probably that of John Colyns of London, who has written at the end of the copy of our romance (leaf 133, back): "Thys Boke belongythe to John Colyns mercer of london dwellyng in the parysshe of our lady at wolchyrche hawe Anexid the Stockes in þe pultre yn Anno domini 1517." Of this John Colyns, in connection with the affairs of his parish, there is mention in other entries in this MS., viz.: on leaf 163 and leaf 165. Still further, the inscription "Sum Roberti Farrer," dating from the sixteenth century, is found on leaf 1, back, and it appears from another entry (leaf 162, back) that the book was in the possession of this "Robert Farrers" in 1570.

The earliest notice of 'Le Morte Arthur,' as far as I have been able to discover, is that which is found in the 'Catalogue of the Harleian Manuscripts,' II, 584. It runs as follows: "I know not who this Poet was, but guess that he lived about the time of K. Henry VII., and that he might have been a Northern man. He

viii § 1. *Early views regarding the Date and Source of the Poem.*

useth many Saxon or obsolete Words, and very often delighted himself (as did the Author of 'Piers Plowman') in the Chime of words beginning with the same letter, as (that I may give one example) 'For welle the wiste withouten wene,' fol. 117^b. I suppose he enlarged upon the story (which was too large before) in that he mentioneth the Tower of London, Syr Lucan de Botellere," etc.

That the date which Wanley, the compiler of the above catalogue, here assigns to 'Le Morte Arthur' is too late was objected already by Bishop Percy in his 'Reliques of Ancient English Poetry'¹ published in 1765. He bases his objection, however, on the absurd ground, that the formula with which our romance opens, "Lordingis that are leff And dere," seems to be quoted in 'Syr Bevis.' Warton in his 'History of English Poetry' (1774-1781) approached the subject with a knowledge of the Middle English romances, which neither Wanley nor Percy possessed, but in classing² the poem with the work of the "nameless minstrels who probably flourished before or about the reign of Edward II.," he makes the mistake of dating it too early.

It is curious that Ritson should have reverted to Wanley's erroneous view with regard to the date. In the brief passage dealing with our romance in the preface of his 'Ancient English Metrical Romances,'³ after speaking in uncomplimentary fashion of Percy's views on this subject, he says that it "is in fact nothing more than part of the 'Morte Darthur' of Caxton turned into easy alternate verse, a very unusual circumstance, no doubt, in the time of Henry the Seventh, to which Wanley properly allots it. The antiquated words used by this versifier are manifestly affected. Caxton's book is the only one known by the name of 'La Morte D'Arthur,' which he took as he found it."

The fame of the 'Morte Darthur' evidently blinded Ritson to the possibility that Malory instead of the old romancer may have been the real borrower—a view which has found favour in recent years—or the still further possibility, which we believe to deserve most consideration, that they borrowed from a common original. It is not at all likely, however, that Ritson made any detailed comparison of the two works with each other, to say nothing of the Old French 'Mort Artus.'

Just three years later, in 1805, Ellis in his 'Specimens of Early

¹ See the edition of this work by A. Schröer, II, 551. Berlin, 1893.

² See the revised edition, II, 190. London, 1871.

³ See the revised edition by Edmund Goldsmid, p. 56. Edinburgh, 1884.

English Metrical Romances,' I, 308, in commenting on the above passage in Ritson's Preface remarks that our romance "differs most essentially from Malory's work, which was a mere compilation; whilst it follows, with tolerable exactness, the French Romance of 'Lancelot,'¹ and its phraseology which perfectly resembles that of Chester and other authors of the fifteenth century, betrays no marks of affectation."² We shall see later on how these statements of Ellis also need correction. It was he, however, that first made the story of the Harleian 'Morte Arthur' accessible to readers generally, for on pp. 328-387 of his first volume he gives a full outline of our romance with occasional specimens of the original text.

At last in 1819 the romance was printed for the Roxburghe Club at the cost of Thomas Ponton. In this edition the type is black letter, and there is no pagination. As a matter of fact, however, the text covers one hundred and twenty-nine pages, and the glossary which is added covers four. There is, moreover, a facsimile prefixed of the two different hands which appear in our copy of the poem, and on the title-page a design "which represents the intrusion of Sir Agravaïne and his companions on the slumbers of the guilty pair and the punishment inflicted by Sir Launcelot on their temerity."

A list of the mistakes in the Roxburghe edition noted by R. F. Weymouth appeared in the 'Transactions of the Philological Society for 1860-61,' pp. 279-281, but the romance was not republished until 1864, when Dr. Furnivall through the firm of Macmillan and Co. brought out the very attractive edition which has since generally superseded that of the Roxburghe Club. It is almost needless to say that there are very few errors in Dr. Furnivall's text, and that his glossary marks a great advance over that which is contained in the edition of 1819. Moreover, the discussion of the dialect and metre of the poems in the preface to his edition is still of interest. Time has dealt more hardly, however, with the prefatory essay on the Arthurian legend by Mr. Herbert Coleridge which follows immediately on that discussion.

In the present edition I have endeavoured to lay before the reader all the facts of importance which relate to the dialect, date and metre of the poem. I have, moreover, investigated with a great deal

¹ That this statement is not correct was pointed out already by Sir F. Madden in the Introduction to his 'Syr Gawayne' (published for the Bannatyne Club. London, 1839). See p. xxii, note.

² See also pp. 327 f. of the same volume.

x § 1. *Differences between the present and Dr. Furnivall's Edition.*

of care the question of the source of the romance and its relation to Sir Thomas Malory's famous work, and I hope that I have been able to put these matters at last in their true light. I have still further endeavoured to bring the glossary up to the level of present knowledge, and I have also laboured by repeated collations to correct whatever errors had crept into Dr. Furnivall's text. The most frequent differences between the text of his edition and my own are in letters at the beginning of lines and in *e*'s at the end of words. It is not always easy in our MS. to say whether the initial letter is intended as a capital or not, and, on the other hand, a good many of the *e*'s used in Dr. Furnivall's edition for indicating the cross of preceding double *l* or the curl of preceding *d* and *r* were left unitalicised by mistake. The list, however, of even these unimportant differences is not long. The following are the only instances in which mistakes of reading in Dr. Furnivall's edition affect the sense (I place his reading first and the corrected reading after): 497, *Sute-Sitte*; 1324, *hyr-hym*; 1455, *not-non*; 1617, *Auauncement-Auaunement*; 2663, *ouer-euer*; 2912, *gryffely-grysely*; 3205, *the-tho*; 3326, *prices-princes*; 3419, *Refte-Reste*;¹ 3468, *be-me*; 3759, *the-tho*; 3826, *the-tho*. It should perhaps be noted also that the name of King Banndemagew is wrongly given in Dr. Furnivall's edition as Baundemorgew (l. 2564).

In regard to the numbering of the lines, I have decided notwithstanding the new arrangement in eight-line stanzas to retain the numbering of Dr. Furnivall's edition. Any change in this matter would have rendered comparison between that and the present edition (including the discussions of language and metre in the prefaces) very difficult, nor could Dr. Seyferth's dissertation, which contains a complete classification of the grammatical forms of our poem and is based on Dr. Furnivall's edition, have been used without very great inconvenience, if such a change had been made.² The numbering I have retained has at least the justification of representing the actual number of lines in the only extant MS. of our poem plus an allowance for those which the missing leaf between leaf 102 and leaf 103 contained.

In the numbering he has adopted Dr. Furnivall makes such an allowance for the loss of "one or more leaves," so that in his edition, although the last line before the gap is numbered 1181, the first one

¹ The sense requires, however, *Refte*, so that I have adopted it in my text.

² Prof. W. W. Skeat says rightly, I think: "An old numbering, even if faulty, should be adhered to, where possible, for the sake of convenience of reference." ('Wars of Alexander,' Preface, p. xiii, E. E. T. S., 1886.)

§ 1. *Dr. Sommer's views concerning the Gap in the MS.* xi

after the gap is numbered 1318. As already stated, I have adhered to his numbering for the sake of convenience, but I think that he has assumed here a greater loss than actually occurred. Each side of a leaf in this part of the MS. contains, as has already been said, from thirty-nine to forty-six lines. Now, if one compares the Middle-English romance with the Old French Vulgate-Lancelot, it will be seen that very little is missing from the former at this place. Judging by this comparison, the missing passage would have included a description of the funeral of the Maid of Ascalot, and possibly¹ some of the details of Lancelot's sojourn in the forest. I do not believe, however, that any one who has made the comparison will regard it as probable that more than one leaf from the Harleian MS. is lost, and that would mean the loss of either ten or eleven stanzas (of eight lines each) plus the two lines which are missing in the MS. from the last stanza before the gap and the same number which are missing from the first stanza after the gap—so a total of either eighty-four or ninety-two lines.

In a letter to the 'Academy' of November 15, 1890, the substance of which he has repeated in a note to his 'Studies on the Sources of the Morte Darthur' (pp. 11 f.), Dr. H. O. Sommer has argued that the gap in the Harleian MS. is after all only apparent, that as a matter of fact the leaves have simply been misplaced. To quote from the 'Studies' Dr. Sommer says:—

"The gap which is caused by the deficiency of the leaf can be filled up as nearly as possible by ll. 832–951, which are, as above stated, misplaced. By transposing these lines into the gap after fol. 102, the episode of 'Guenevere and Mador de la Porte' becomes a complete whole, if we omit ll. 912–927 because they are to a certain extent repeated by ll. 1318–1331 (comp. *e. g.* ll. 916, 917, and 919 to ll. 1318, 1320 and 1321), and also ll. 928–951 as being an apparent contradiction to ll. 1467–1503.

"How did this confusion arise? I venture to think that I can satisfactorily answer this question. The poet while transcribing the French prose into English verse, finding that he had so far abandoned his source that it was impossible for him to connect his narrative

¹ One has to remember that the Old French Vulgate-Lancelot is not the source of the Harleian romance, although their narratives are similar. The latter shows many transpositions of episodes, as I have pointed out in 'Anglia,' xxiii, 87 ff., so that one cannot speak positively about this matter, and hence I have not tried to supply the missing portion of the story by extracts from the French romance.

xii § 1. *Reasons for rejecting Dr. Sommer's proposed Changes.*

with the ensuing events, re-wrote a part of his work, and very likely marked the portions which he wished to be omitted. The scribes afterwards neglected or did not understand his indications, and so the Harl. MS. contains a certain portion twice which varied only in the end. Thus the folio missing after 102 evidently contained ll. 832-911 + two lines rhyming with ll. 1318 and 1319, and completing ll. 1318-1323 to a stanza of eight lines—or eighty-two lines, the exact number of lines contained by several folios of the Harl. MS.

“If these proposed emendations are accepted, the episode of ‘Guinever and Mador de la Porte’ would consist of (1) ll. 832-910; (2) two lines + 1318-1671, and thus arranged would be in accordance with the account given of this episode by the various MSS. of the ‘Lancelot’ in the British Museum, and with that of Malory’s ‘Le Morte Darthur,’ book XVIII, chaps. iii to viii.”

With reference to all these arbitrary and complicated changes which Dr. Sommer proposes,¹ I need only say that they are wholly uncalled for. The occasion for his proposing the transposition of ll. 832 ff., as he says elsewhere in the note from which I have just been quoting, is that they interrupt “the episode of Lancelot and the Fair Maiden of Ascolot.” But notwithstanding the erroneous statement in the last paragraph we find the same arrangement exactly in the Old French Vulgate-Lancelot, both in the printed texts and the British Museum MSS.²—only in the Vulgate-Lancelot the narrative is broken by the insertion of still other material. One simply has to collate our poem with the Old French romance to convince oneself of the truth of this assertion, and it is difficult to see how Dr. Sommer could ever have proposed his rearrangement of the former, if he had really made this collation.³

Apart from the arrangement in stanzas the most notable difference in appearance between the present edition and Dr. Furnivall’s is due to the use of italicised *e*, which is made in the latter wherever the preceding double *l* has the cross-line drawn through it (*H*) or the preceding *d* or *r* ends with a flourish. In accordance with the practice

¹ Seyferth in his ‘Sprache und Metrik des mittellenglischen strophischen Gedichtes,’ ‘Le Morte Arthur’ und sein Verhältniss zu ‘The Lyfe of Ipomydon’ (Berlin, 1895), p. 74, accepts them without further examination.

² The MSS. break the episode of ‘Mador de la Porte’ even more than the printed text, inasmuch as they interrupt it also with the story of Lancelot’s accidental wounding, and Bors’ search for him. Cp. Additional MS. 10294, leaf 64, col. 3—leaf 65, col. 2.

³ What the order of incidents is in the Vulgate-Lancelot as compared with the Harleian romance, I have set forth in my article in ‘Anglia,’ xxiii, pp. 83 f.

§ 2. *Dr. Sommer's views concerning the Sources of the Poem.* xiii

of the Early English Text Society, a special type has been, of course, employed in the present edition to reproduce these peculiar forms, and also *m* and *n* with the flourish.

I have moreover expanded the MS. contraction 'w^t' into *with*, instead of *wyth*, which Dr. Furnivall adopts in his edition.¹ The matter is of no great importance, but where the uncontracted form is used in the MS., *with* and *withe* greatly preponderate over *wyth* and *wythe*. I find indeed *wyth* only once, l. 99, and *wythe* only three times, ll. 1963, 2447, 2625, whereas *with* occurs five times, ll. 45, 51, 842, 1606, 2127, and *withe* eighteen times, ll. 955, 1638, 1642, 1723, 1778, 1820, 2031, 2101, 2155, 2159, 2181, 2307, 2442, 2464, 2535, 2552, 2577, 2602. Nearly all these uncontracted forms occur at the beginning of lines.²

§ 2. SOURCES.

It will have been observed from the above section that both Ritsen and Ellis hazarded suggestions regarding the source of our romance, and the same is true of still other scholars of later date. This question, however, was first discussed in detail by Dr. H. Oskar Sommer in the third volume of his edition of Malory's³ '*Morte Darthur*' (London, 1889-91), especially pp. 249 ff. Nevertheless in his discussion Dr. Sommer in the main simply develops suggestions of earlier scholars, for the most part ill-founded, with reference to the source of our romance and its relation to the other Death of Arthur romances. For instance, his notion that the portion of our romance which follows the gap in the Harleian MS. is the original of the latter part of Malory is derived from Branscheid ('*Anzeiger*' to '*Anglia*,' viii (1885), 220), and the further notion that the Old French Vulgate-Lancelot constitutes the source of the Harleian '*Morte Arthur*' down to the gap seems a partial and ill-considered

¹ The late Prof. Koelbing expands also by *with*, in his edition of '*The Lyfe of Ipomydon*,' which is contained in the same MS. as our poem, having been copied by the same scribe that copied ll. 1-1091 of '*Le Morte Arthur*.'

² It should perhaps be added that at the beginning of certain divisions of the story (e. g. 424, 832, etc.) the scribes left space for the illumination of the initial letters, although they were never actually illuminated. The initial letters in such cases are small letters, but with reference to the scribes' intention I have represented them in this edition, as they were in Dr. Furnivall's, by large, heavily leaded capitals.

³ I have confined myself in the following to a discussion of the immediate sources of our romance. The ultimate sources I expect to discuss in an edition of the Old French '*Mort Artus*' (the last branch of the prose '*Lancelot du Lac*') which I am now engaged in preparing.

adoption of Ellis' erroneous view, cited above, with regard to the relation of our poem and the old French romance.¹

In an article which appeared in 'Anglia,' xxiii (1900), pp. 67 ff.,² I submitted Dr. Sommer's discussion to a detailed examination, and succeeded, I hope, in fixing the true relations to each other of the Harleian 'Morte Arthur,' Malory's work, and the Old French Vulgate-Lancelot. The conclusions of this article I will summarise as follows, referring the reader for the full argument to the article itself:

I. Dr. Sommer wavers between two opinions, (1) that the portion of the Harleian romance after the gap in the MS. is the original of the corresponding portion of Malory's 'Morte D'Arthur'; (2) that this part of the Harleian romance and the corresponding portion of Malory are derived from a common source. The second of these views, however, is evidently the correct one,³ only it should be recognised that the poet of the Harleian romance does not begin to draw from the same source as Malory just after the gap in the MS. (l. 1318), but somewhat later (l. 1672), or to state the matter conversely, it is only the twentieth and twenty-first books of Malory which are drawn from the same source as the latter part of the metrical romance, not any portion of the eighteenth.

The following passages in Malory, which have nothing corresponding in the English metrical romance, show that he was not dependent on the latter. The citations are from Sommer's edition (vol. i.), London, 1889-91.

1. The long conversation between Lancelot and Guinevere when the former has been espied in the Queen's chamber (pp. 801-802).

2. The latter part of Lancelot's speech to Agravain and his knights whilst Lancelot is still in the Queen's chamber, together with the reply of Agravain and Mordred (pp. 802-803).

3. Lancelot's parting with Guinevere after he has slain Agravain and his knights (p. 803).

¹ Dr. Furnivall devotes very little space to the discussion of sources, and with regard to the relation of our romance to Malory, he seems to have remained in doubt as to whether the latter was dependent on the former or whether both were derived from a common original. He noticed, however, correctly that the Harleian romance could not have been based on what is known as the Vulgate-Lancelot. See Preface to his edition, pp. xvi f.

² The full title is: 'The Middle English metrical romance, "Le Morte Arthur" (Harleian MS. 2252): its sources and its relation to Thomas Malory's "Morte Darthur."'

³ E. Wechsler has adopted it from Sommer in his 'Ueber die verschiedenen Radaktionen des Robert von Borron zugeschriebenen Graal-Lancelot-Cyklus' (Halle, 1895), p. 36.

§ 2. *Sources. The relation of the Poem to Malory's last two Books.* xv

4. Lancelot's interview with the knights who assemble to join him after the affair with Agravain (pp. 804-807).

5. The latter part of Arthur's speech on his being told that Guinevere has been carried off, and that his knights have been slain (pp. 811-812).

6. Lancelot's long speech in excuse of himself when he brings Guinevere back (p. 824).

7. Lancelot's consultation with his knights before leaving Arthur's kingdom (pp. 828-829).

8. Lancelot's consultation with his knights before going out to meet Gawain at the siege of Benwyk (p. 834).

9. Gawain's death-bed conversation with Arthur and his letter to Lancelot (pp. 841-843).

10. Lancelot's speech on hearing of the revolt of Mordred (p. 852).

11. The visit of Lancelot to Gawain's tomb (p. 853).

12. The warning which Lancelot receives in a vision to go to Guinevere, together with her death and burial (pp. 856-858).

13. Hector's lament over Lancelot (p. 860).

There is, furthermore, nothing in the Old French Vulgate-Lancelot to correspond to the above passages, except in the case of those numbered 6 and 9, and even in these cases there is no direct dependence. Nevertheless, these passages 6 and 9 and many others of less extent show that there is a connection of some sort between Malory and the Old French romance, and all the difficulties of the situation are best explained, if we assume that the author of the Middle English romance and Malory drew from a common source, which in its turn was a modification of the Old French Vulgate-Lancelot. The similarities and occasional coincidences of phraseology which one observes in comparing Malory and the Middle English metrical romance are only such as must occur where two writers are following closely the same original.¹

¹ In his selections from 'Morte Darthur' (Boston, 1897), pp. 305 ff., Dr. W. E. Mead has discussed this question from the point of view of phraseology alone, without making the investigation as to source. His conclusions agree with mine. W. W. Newell, who in his 'King Arthur and the Table Round' (London, 1897), ii, pp. 201-239, and pp. 262 f., has given an abstract of our romance, remarks, p. 262: 'The exquisitely beautiful work of the beginning of the fifteenth century (?) depends on the French prose romance, but with variations; the writer perhaps obtained his material from oral recitation, and the poem may not have been written, but only recited, and recorded by another hand at a date considerably after the time of its composition.' After the discussion in the text, I do not believe that it is necessary to consider this statement more particularly.

II. *a.* As already stated, it is not at l. 1318 that the poet of the Harleian romance began to use the same source as Malory, but at l. 1672. The lines that lie between (1318-1671) deal with the episode of Mador de la Porte. Now, apart from the very important difference that in Malory this episode occurs at a different point in the order of the narrative, the chief variations between the account of these incidents in our metrical romance as compared with Malory are as follows:—

1. We have in MH. (the romance of the Harleian MS.) two separate appeals of Guinevere to Bors before he consents to defend her, viz. ll. 1340 ff. and 1422 ff., whereas in Malory there is only one (pp. 731 f.).

2. In MH. (1357 ff.) the Queen also appeals to Gawain, to which there is nothing to correspond in Malory.

3. The circumstances of Lancelot's meeting with Bors in the forest are different in the two works. In MH. Bors and Lionel have gone forth to offer up their orisons at a chapel in the forest before the battle (1459 ff.) and meet Lancelot riding there by chance. In Malory (p. 732) Bors, who is alone, goes forth on purpose to seek Lancelot.

4. The scene and speech of the Queen in her chamber alone when she laments the absence of Lancelot, ll. 1404 ff. Not in Malory, pp. 730 ff.

5. In MH. they sit at the "borde" before the battle (1504 ff.), of which there is nothing in Malory (pp. 732 f.).

6. In MH. both Mador and Lancelot are unhorsed in their encounter (1584); in Malory only Mador, whilst Lancelot of his own accord after the first encounter descends from his steed (p. 735).

7. In MH. Mador asks Lancelot to reveal to him his name (1604 ff.); there is nothing similar to this scene in Malory (pp. 736 f.).

8. In MH. the squires are put to the torture, and in this way the true author of the death of Mador's brother is forced to confess his crime (1648 ff.). In Malory it is the "damoyseyl of the lake," Nymue, who reveals the criminal (p. 737).

Now in regard to all the points just enumerated, in which MH. differs from Malory, with the exception of the last, which is found only in MH., a comparison shows that it stands in close relation to the *Vulgate-Lancelot*, so that there can be no doubt that these features of the *romance* red ultimately from that

§ 2. *Errors of Dr. Sommer regarding these Lines.* xvii

work (or its source), although several of them have undergone transposition or alteration in the process. In fact, whilst differing markedly from Malory, as the above enumeration sufficiently shows, the relation to the Vulgate-Lancelot is just the same as that of the whole preceding portion of the romance down to l. 1318—a relation not of direct dependence, but of ultimate derivation from it through an intermediate version of the part of the Lancelot-story based on that romance (or its source) of the same general nature as the common source of MH., ll. 1672–3969, and the last two books of the ‘Morte Darthur.’¹

b. Dr. Sommer’s view, then, that the lines which came just after the gap in the Harleian MS. are derived from a different source from the portion of the romance that precedes that gap is erroneous. But this erroneous view has led him (p. 250) to look for contradictions between these portions of our poem where none really exist. The only point of this kind he has cited which is really worth considering is that of the two accounts which Lancelot receives concerning Queen Guinevere’s troubles over the poisoning of the Scottish knight—the one occurring before the gap, ll. 928 ff., and the other after, in ll. 1467 ff. In the first case he hears the story by general report whilst he is lying ill in the forest under the care of a hermit, and in the second he hears it from Bors after he has recovered and is riding about. There is, however, really no inconsistency here, for in the Vulgate-Lancelot also, at exactly corresponding places in the narrative, Lancelot is told twice of these events. The apparent inconsistency is simply due to the fact that the author of the English romance has neglected to make Lancelot remark in the second instance that he had heard of the incident before.² The author of the French romance had properly made him say this. The awkwardness, however, of the English poet in this passage is nothing as compared with that which he has been guilty of in leaving the cause of Lancelot’s illness unaccounted for in ll. 933 ff. The last time we had heard of Lancelot before, viz. in ll. 780 ff., he was in perfect health. As a matter of fact, the poet in this instance went so far in the condensation of the story of his source that he has

¹ The fact that we have after the gap *Bors*, and *Ector* (prevailing), as the forms for the proper names which appear as *Boerte* and *Ector* in the earlier part of our text is due no doubt to a preference of the second scribe who began writing at l. 1092. As it happens, the names do not occur between l. 1092 and the gap.

² As far as Lancelot’s inquiry on meeting Bors, l. 1482, is concerned: “how now farys my lady bryght,” this is purely conventional. Such conventional inquiries are especially common in ballad literature.

become unintelligible without reference to that source. If we refer to the corresponding place in the Vulgate-Lancelot (which, though not the actual source of MH., undoubtedly gives us the main outline of the story of that source), we learn that the cause of Lancelot's illness is an accidental wound, which he has received from one of the king's huntsmen.¹

III. The source of the Harleian romance from l. 1672 to the end is unquestionably the same as that of Malory's twentieth and twenty-first books. Now, what is the source of the portion which goes before l. 1672? As I have already had occasion to say in another connection, the source of the earlier portion—from the beginning of the poem down to l. 1672—was a modification of the Vulgate-Lancelot different from the common source of MH., ll. 1672-3969, and Malory's last two books, although of the same general nature. For this earlier portion we have no parallel version as we have for the later portion in Malory's last two books, but a comparison with Malory and the Vulgate-Lancelot shows that the author of the Harleian romance in this later portion followed very closely the source used by himself and Malory, and there is no reason to suppose that his method of dealing with his source in the earlier portion was different. Making the comparison for the later portion, viz. that which extends from l. 1672 to the end, we find that wherever the poem of the Harleian MS. has any incident not in Malory, something parallel to it may still be found in the Vulgate-Lancelot, showing that in such instances the poem represents their common original more accurately than Malory.²

The fact that the Harleian romance and Malory take up the incidents in this later portion of the narrative in exactly the same order shows still further that the Middle English poet followed his source closely. There is only one transposition, indeed, of any importance which he has allowed himself, as a comparison with Malory shows, and the reason in that case is obvious. I refer to the end of the story, where the author, being in a hurry to conclude his poem, suppresses the story of how Lancelot and his fellows went to Almesbury and fetched the dead Queen's body to Glastonbury (Malory, Book XXI, Ch. xi), but further on (ll. 3954-3961), after describing Lancelot's death, relates in the briefest way that his companions did this.

¹ Cp. Additional MS. 10294, leaf 64, col. 3—leaf 64, back, col. 3.

² I have discussed this at great length in 'Anglia,' xxiii, pp. 96 ff.

§ 2. *Relation of Ll. 1-1181 to Malory & the Vulgate-Lancelot.* xix

I repeat then that since our author can be shown to have followed his original closely in the only part of his work where the means of control exist, there can be no reasonable doubt that he did the same thing in the earlier part too, where such means are wanting.

I have already pointed out differences between Malory and the poem for the lines after the gap in the MS. down to l. 1671, which show that the two are independent of each other in that part of the narrative,¹ and I will now do the same thing for the portion before the gap, ll. 1-1181. In all of the points of difference I am about to cite there is an agreement between the Harleian romance and the Vulgate-Lancelot as against Malory. I follow Dr. Sommer's enumeration (pp. 249 f.)—only I leave out the first point he makes as being incorrect.

1. In the Harleian poem (= MH., ll. 63 ff.) when Arthur has left for Winchester, Lancelot comes to Guinevere with the intention of taking leave and going to the tournament, whereas in Malory Guinevere suggests that he should go.

2. The armour of Lancelot is red in MH. (l. 176), and the colour of the sleeve is not mentioned, whereas in Malory the sleeve is red and the colour of the armour is not specified (except in the case of the shield, which is white).

3. Lancelot in MH. (ll. 245 ff. and 321 ff.) stays both before and after the tournament at the house of his host's sister, whereas in Malory he stays before the tournament at the house of a rich "burgeis," and after it, at a hermitage.

4. When Lancelot hears of the new tournament to which he cannot go, in MH. (ll. 382 ff.) his wound breaks open from the violence of his emotion; in Malory he overstrains himself by attempting to ride.

5. The maiden's letter which in MH. (ll. 1078 ff.) reproaches Lancelot with cruelty, does not do so in Malory.

6. Whilst in MH. (ll. 952 ff.) Lancelot is absent from court when the maiden's body arrives, he is present in Malory.

On the other hand, Dr. Sommer's assertion (p. 249) that the sequence of incidents in MH. and the Vulgate-Lancelot is the same is erroneous. "A minute examination of the first part of MH.," he says (p. 250), "discloses several points which do not agree with P.L. (= the 1513 print of the Vulgate-Lancelot), but they are of very secondary importance and can be explained without

¹ See p. xvi, above.

xx § 3. *Various opinions as to the Dialect of the Poem.*

exception as the poet's modifications of the source in order to adapt his material to the exigencies of his metre; thus in his tendency to avoid proper names, he gives no names for the localities where the events he relates take place." These words, however, give an utterly false idea of the real relation of MH. and P.L. As a matter of fact, when we compare the former with the latter, we discover that the English poem exhibits numberless transpositions of material, and indeed in the part covered by ll. 504-831, the two works are so unlike that it is difficult to keep up any comparison at all. I have set forth the whole matter, however, in great detail in '*Anglia*,' xxiii, pp. 87 ff., and must refer the reader to that place for the proof of my assertion. It is only in the part of the narrative, covered by ll. 832-1181, that the English and French romances run closely together. To conclude, as I have already said more than once, the source of ll. 1-1671 is not the Vulgate-Lancelot, but some modification of the Vulgate-Lancelot (or, possibly, its source) no longer in existence.

§ 3. DIALECT AND DATE.

The dialect of our poem has been generally recognized as Midland by all recent students¹ who have expressed themselves on the subject. The only question has been whether the language was that of the East or West Midland. In his edition of our poem² Dr. Furnivall adopts the view of the late Dr. Richard Morris to the effect that it is East Midland, but the value of Dr. Morris' conclusions is impaired by his failure to distinguish between the language of the poet and that of the scribes. On the other hand, Professor Alois Brandl in the Introduction to his edition of '*Thomas of Erceldoune*'³ (p. 55) speaks of our poem as West Midland, and Dr. Seyferth in his dissertation⁴ (p. 57) has since assigned it more definitely to the Northern border of the West Midland region. I believe that Dr. Seyferth's view of the origin of our poem is the correct one. But let us see what is the evidence of the forms (*i. e.* those fixed by rime) in regard to the language of the poet as distinguished from that of the scribes.⁵ As Dr. Seyferth has remarked, we have in our poem as characteristic of

¹ Wanley's opinion, which I have quoted above (p. vii) in another connection, has of course no value.

² See Preface, pp. xiv f.

³ Published at Berlin in 1880.

⁴ For the title of this study, which is an enlargement of a dissertation presented previously for the doctorate, see above, p. xii, note 1.

⁵ Dr. Seyferth, pp. 54 ff., has already discussed the question of dialect very fully. What I have to say here is in the main based on the materials he has collected in his dissertation.

a Midland document a mixture of Northern and Southern peculiarities of speech. To take some of the common dialect tests, O.E. *ā* yields *ô* as a rule in our text. Cp. the rimes, 761 ff. *stone : torne : mone : none*, 976 ff. *tho : go : so : therto*, 1073 ff. *woo : goo : ther-to : fo*, 1112 ff. *thoo : do : therto : so*, 2803 ff. *bone* (= request) : *done : none : one*, 2938 ff. *two : go : thro : to*, 2898 ff. *none* (= noon) : *vyppon : A-none : one* (cp. also 1792 ff.), 3678 ff. *doo : mo*. On the other hand, where the *ā* was followed by *r*, we have resulting sometimes *ā* and sometimes *ô*, but the former much more frequently. For *ô* cp. 1169 ff. *sore : more : bore* (= born), 3715 ff. *more : ore : therfore : sore*. On the other hand, for *ā* cp. the rime of *mare* with *fare*, 434, 2040, 2052, 2111, 2238, 2601, 3769, 3837, with *care*, 557, 685, 687, 771, 1091, 1125, 1426, 3605, 3737, 3760; again of *sare* with *fare*, 511, 802, 2046, 2117, 2216, 2244, 2442, 2458, 2501, 2597, 2801, 3835, with *care*, 559, 681, 3599, 3756, with *bare*, 3069. Notice besides that *ā* is kept in *bare*, 951, riming with *fare*, and with *care*, 951, 2101, 2214, and 2606.

O.E. *þær*, *wæron* show as their vowel in our text sometimes *ā*, sometimes *ê*, and *wæron* shows in two instances also *ô*, viz. in 1172 and 2099. In both of these instances the scribe has written *were*, but the rime with *bore* (= born), 1174, 2101, shows that the original form was *wore*. For examples of *there* as fixed by rime see 552 ff. (*fere : there : were : here*), 641 ff. (*lere : were : here : there*), 720 ff. (*there : nere : brere : chere*), 825 ff. (*there : chere : nere : here*), 1721 ff. (*here : there : *swere : yere*), etc.; for *thare* cp. 507, 2042, 2452, 2577 (: *fare*), 775, 804, 979, 1422 (: *care*), etc. On the other hand, for *were* cp. 3 (: *dere*), 159 (: *sopere : bachelere : dere*), 413 (: *fere*), 435 (: *dere : nere*), 480 (: *chere*), 556 (: *here : fere*), 643 (*here : lere*), 2224 (*nere : fere*), 2766 (: *clere*), and 3238 (: *Boteler : here : fere*); and for *ware* cp. 220 (: *fare*), 345, 351 (: *fare*), 769 (: *care*), 949 (*fare : care*), 1095 (*care : bare*, adj.), 2115 (: *fare*), 2797 (: *fare*), etc. In addition to these words notice that *whar* in 3603 stands in rime with *care*. The mixture of the *a*, *e*, and *o* forms in these words is characteristic of the Northern and North Midland districts.¹

W.S. *ea* before *l* + consonant yields sometimes *ē* and sometimes *ō*. For the former cp. 920, 1928, 2917 (*welde : shelde*), 3405 (*feld : weld*), and for the latter 712 (*folde : golde : wolde*), 803, 3917

¹ See on this subject F. J. Curtis, 'Anglia,' xvi, 449 f. It is often impossible to say which of these variant forms our poet used in a particular case, so, on the whole, I have thought it better to follow Dr. Furnivall in leaving the MS. forms unchanged.

(*wolde* : *bolde*), 1705, 2302, 2548, 3589 (*holde* : *wolde*), 3302, 3686 (*holde* : *molde*).

As regards the representatives of O.E. *ȝ* (the result of mutation), we have both *i* (appearing often as *y*) and *e* in our text, but the evidence under this heading is not very important, especially since in the case of sounds that, comparatively speaking, differ so little it is impossible to say how far the forms even in rime are due to the scribes.

Looking now at the evidence of the inflexional forms, we observe as characteristic of the North and North Midland the present participle in *-and*, which occurs three times in rime, viz. 2365 ff., *lande* : *garlande* : *hande* : *synghand* ; 2661 ff., *honde* : *stonde* : *londe* : *lyvande*, and 2834, *stonde* : *londe* : *hond* : *levande*. Indeed, the only present participle in *-ynge* fixed by rime is *lastynge*, 3676, which rimes with *kyngge*, *thyngge*, and *sokeryngge* (verbal noun).

The 2 sing. of the present indicative ends in *-ys* in the only instance where it is fixed by rime, namely, in 1572, *gredys* riming with *dedys* : *nedys* : **wedys*. One is tempted to cite three more such forms in our poem which do not occur in rime, especially as two of them occur in the portion of the text which was written by a scribe evidently more Southern than the poet, I mean, viz. *semys* 165, *presons* 1853, *lystenes* 2402, but this is hardly safe. Similarly there is but one instance in our poem of the 2 sing. pret. indic. standing in rime, and that like the 2 pres. indic. points to the North, viz. 3430 *Ralde* (N.B. without the inflexional *-est*) riming with *sprad* (3 sg. pret. ind.) and *by-stadde*.¹ The evidence here is, of course, rather scanty, but as far as it goes it points to North or North Midland.

In the only instances where the 3 sing. pres. indic. occurs in rime it ends in *s*, viz. *tase*, 956, *has*, 958 (*was* : *case*). These forms like the others cited point to the North or North Midland.

The forms of the 3 pl. pres. indic. which are fixed by rime end in *-e* (doubtless mute), see 1685, *here* 1733, *ryde* 2569—that is to say, are Midland in character. (The forms *dwelle* 232, and *byde* 243, probably also belong here, though they may be subjunctives.) We have besides occurring not in rime, but probably due to the poet

¹ Dr. Seyferth has pointed out, moreover, that wherever 2 sing. pret. indic. forms in *-iste*, *-yst(e)* occur in our poem, even though not in rime, except in l. 1155, —viz. in 1148, 1152, 1160, 2832, 3942, 3945, “verlangt der vers die dem norden eigene abwerfung der endung.” This is certainly true from the point of view of strict regularity, yet I can't say that the change would improve the rhythm.

rather than to his more Southern scribe, the following instances of the 3 pl. pres. indic. ending in *-s*, viz. *buskes* 2525, 2715; *graythes* 2530, and *has* 2599. These forms are Northern or North Midland.

To judge by the rimes the preterite form *was* was pronounced *wes*, as in many Northern texts (Barbour's 'Bruce,' 'Sir Tristrem,' 'Octavian B'). Only twice does it rime with *a*, namely, in 952, 1135. In all other places the pronunciation *wes* is required, viz. 274, 421, 994, 998, 1514, 1717, 1863, 2349, 2518, 2730, 2955, 3559.

It is to be noted that there are several instances of the inflected infinitive fixed by rime in our text: *sayne*, 861, 1028, 1106, 1130, 1587, etc.; *slayne*, 2410; *sene*, 1971, 2435, 2671, 3342; *bene*, 1503, 1925, 2022, 2268, 2284; *done*, 1122, 2068, 2805. On the other hand, the infinitive without ending is the rule, being so frequent as to need no illustration. The infinitive ending *i* (*y*) from O.E. *-ian* (second class of weak verbs), which is common in the South, is not found in our text.

The past participle, *drayne* = (drawn), 859, 1997, 2164, 3014, 3325, is also characteristic of the North (cp. 'Sir Tristrem,' 'Sir Degrevant,' 'Octavian B'). For the rest, the ending *-(e)n* is found in the following forms fixed by rime: *borne*, 3115, 3335, 3553, 3741; *lorne*, 3117, 3331, 3551, 3739; *forlorne*, 3209; *sene*, 522, 550, 691, etc.; *bene*, 524, 1588, 1734, etc.; *done*, 370; *goone*, 3113. On the other hand, we have as past part. *be*, 3641; *ago*, 149; *take*, 582.—The prefix *-i* of the past participle is found only in the following cases: *imanased*, 479; *iwounded*, 934; *ibente*, 1035; *ibrowghte*, 1093; *idighte*, 610, 970, 972; *irade*, 2651. In each of these cases the prefix, being required by the metre, is evidently due to the poet.

The following words also indicate Northern or North Midland origin: *fone* (= few), 2378, and *sitte* (*sytte*), 497, 870, from O.N. *sýti* (= sorrow). Somewhat less significant are *dede* (= death), 911, and *till* (= to), 191, 837, 1786, etc. Of more force, perhaps, is *to* in conjunctive use (= until), 374, 3437, although from its nature it does not occur in rime. The words, *sprente* (= sprang), 1846, 1949, 3357, etc.; *glente*, 3493; *pro*, 589, 1526, 2389, etc.; *layne*, 989, 1108, 2650, etc., belong also to the more Northern dialects.¹ To these the words *busk* and *graythe* and *bayne*, all three of Scandinavian origin, should probably be added.

As regards final *e*, of course, not all such *-e*'s which we find in

¹ Cp. G. Sarrazin's edition of 'Octavian' (Heilbronn, 1885), Introduction, pp. xxxvii f.

xxiv § 3. *Reasons for assuming a Midland origin for the Poem.*

our text are due to the poet. Nevertheless, the rhythm constantly requires the pronunciation of the final -e. On the other hand, the following rimes seem to show that it was not always pronounced: 1792 ff. *sone : vppon : fone : mone*; 2062 ff. *come : sone : vppon : done*; 2445 ff. *wone : on : mone : sone*; 146 ff. *newe : show* (for *shewe*): *hewe : knew*; 593 ff. *shewe : knew : neure : drewe* (in this instance, however, *knew* may stand for *knewe*, the subj.); 2396 ff. *he : me : the : bye*; 2126 ff. *ascrye : by : why : cowardly*; 809 ff. *day : away : lay : playe* (similarly 728 ff.); 2954 ff., *Mordreid : rede*; 2653 ff., *sped* (p.p.): *wede : nede : lede*. Especially frequent are the rimes of the pret. ind. *mighte* with *knight*, 161, 583, 616, 872, *bright*, 841, *light*, 583, 708, *sight*, 616. There is always the possibility of a slovenly rime in such cases, but on the whole it can hardly be doubted that our poet often did not sound his final -e's.

It is a peculiarity of our text¹ that the rimes seem often to require as a plural form, *knight* (also once *right*, 2720) as in 677, 919, 925, 1048, 1480, etc. Such a plural form for this word, however, as far as I am aware, is not found in any dialect, and one is at a loss to explain whether we have here simply an arbitrary change of the grammatical form for the sake of rime or whether the poet's own form was the usual *knightis*, so that in such cases we have simply bad rimes as in 812, *nakyd : make*; 529, *lyff : swithe*, etc. The latter is, of course, more likely.

From the above it will be seen that the language of the poet as distinguished from that of the scribes abounds in peculiarities of the Northern dialect. The representation of O.E. *á* by *ô* (except where *r* follows) everywhere in the forms fixed by rime, and still more the prevailing plural indic. endings in -e show, however, that the dialect is Midland.² In the absence of marked distinctions between the East and West Midland dialects³ it is difficult to say to which group the language of our poet belonged, but in view of the form *tase* (= takes), to say nothing of the forms of the 2 sing. pres. indic. not in rime, the predominance of *ande* (not *ende*) as the pres. part. ending, and lastly in view of the fact that the 2 sing. pret. ind. seems to have ended like the first person, though only one of these forms is fixed by rime, the West Midland seems more likely. We should accord-

¹ See the Preface to Dr. Furnivall's edition, p. xxiv, note.

² Moreover the infinitives in -n do not belong to strictly Northern dialects, nor do the past participles with prefix *z*.

³ See on this subject Morsbach, 'Mittelenglische Grammatik,' Halle, 1896, p. 15.

§ 3. *Conclusions as to Dialect and Date of the Poem.* xxv

ingly assign our poem to the Northern boundary of the North-west Midland region.

As regards the time that 'Le Morte Arthur' was composed, Dr. Seyferth has cited (p. 58), the occurrence in our text of the words *fele*, 6, 228, 2019, 2032, 2157, etc.; *lede*, 653, 2569; *blee*, 739, 3504, 3779, 3896; and *wynne* (= come), 1830, as proof that our poem was written before the end of the fourteenth century. Dr. Sarrazin has observed¹ that these words had disappeared even in the Northern dialects by the beginning of the fifteenth century. This would accord with the general condition of inflexions in our poem, so that one will hardly go wrong in placing our romance about the end of the fourteenth century.²

The language of the scribes like that of the author of our poem was Midland, of course, as our text shows. It is worthy of remark, however, that the second scribe shows more Southern peculiarities than could be attributed, as is evident from the above analysis, to the poet himself, or, we may add, than are found in the work of the first scribe. Thus in the portion of our text written by the first scribe we find all forms of the plural pres. indic. ending in *-e*, whereas we have in that written by the second scribe besides these prevailing forms in *-e* ten instances of plural pres. indic. in *-en* and two in *-eth*. Again, the portion written by the first scribe shows forty-six forms in *-s* for the 3 sing. pres. ind. and twenty-four in *th*, whilst that written by the second scribe shows fifty-five instances of each. It accords with this that the first scribe uses for the pronoun of the third person plural exclusively the forms *theym*, *them*, *their*, *there*, whereas the second scribe has sixty instances of *hem* to thirty-one of *theym* and *them*, and seventeen of *her* and *hyr* to twenty-eight of *their* and *there*.³

§ 4. METRE.

'Le Morte Arthur' is composed in stanzas of eight lines with four accents to the line. The prevailing rhythm is iambic and the usual rime-order is ab ab ab ab. This form of stanza is found in lyrical poetry, as for instance in 'Specimens of Lyrical Poetry,' ed. T. Wright,

¹ 'Englische Studien,' vii, 137.

² Brandl in his article on Middle English Literature, Paul's 'Grundriss II, Abtheilung I,' p. 708, discusses our romance under the heading of fifteenth century literature, but says nothing specifically about the date.

³ Cp. Seyferth, pp. 58 f.—also pp. 43, 51 f. I don't think that the evidence is sufficient for us to assign these scribes so exactly as Seyferth does to the East and South-east Midland respectively.

London, 1842, p. 99; 'Alya Cantica,' 'Political, Religious and Love Poems,' ed. F. J. Furnivall, E. E. T. S. 1886, p. 109), and the first of 'Laurence Minot's Poems' (ed. J. Hall, Oxford, 1897). It occurs, moreover, sporadically in the 'Chester Plays' (cp. The Fall of Lucifer), and is the prevailing stanza form in the 'Legend of St. Gregory' contained in the Auchinleck MS. (ed. Fritz Schulz, Königsberg, 1876). The stanza was perhaps too exacting for the writers of romances¹—at least I know of no other romance which is written in it. The Prologue to 'Thomas of Erceldoune' (see Brandl's edition, Berlin, 1880) furnishes the nearest approach to it, but only one of the three stanzas there conforms to the normal rime-order of the stanza in 'Le Morte Arthur.' Even in our romance we have variations from this normal rime-order in the following stanzas: In st. 365, 398, 421, 445, 478 we have the rime-order ab ab ac ac; in st. 147, 372, ab ab ba ba; in st. 1 ab ab cb cb.²

It is to be noted, moreover, that st. 46, 177, 186 contain only seven lines, st. 187, 241, 291, 341, 393, 429, only six, and st. 462 only four. In all these apparently defective stanzas the sense is complete in the text as it stands; nevertheless, it is probable that in each instance except the last the lines necessary to make up the full stanza were lost in copying. At the same time, it would not be remarkable if a medieval poet of the minstrel class in composing a poem which was intended practically only for recitation should occasionally omit a line or lines either through inadvertence or through a momentary difficulty in supplying the full complement of lines. In the case of st. 462 especially, which contains only four lines, it seems to me in the highest degree unlikely that anything stood between l. 3681 and l. 3682. And if the poet has allowed himself here a stanza of four lines, why should he not allow himself occasionally a stanza of six lines at any rate?

The rimes in our poem are frequently inexact. Examples of some of the more pronounced instances which cannot be set down to the account of the scribes are as follows: 712 ff. *lade* : *ledde* : *sade* : *glade*; 761 ff. *stone* : *torne* : *mone* : *none*; 808 ff. *sake* : *lake* : *nakyd* : *make*; 2818 ff. *hede* : *leuyd* : *wavyd* : *levyde* (though *hede* here may be for *heved*); 2979 ff. *come* : *crowne* : *towne* : *bowne*; 3224 ff. *dyde* :

¹ Cp. on the subject of this stanza J. Schipper's 'Altenglische Metrik' (Bonn, 1881), pp. 346 f. There are variations as to rime-order in the 'Coventry Mysteries' and the other poems which he cites.

² Seyferth (p. 59) proposes to get rid of some of these irregularities by changes in the text, but I don't think that this is warranted.

§ 5. *Authorship. Relation of our poem to 'Ipomedon B.'* xxvii

stad; 3288 ff. *lese* : *chese* : *pease* : *dayes*, 3320 ff. *caste* : *truste* : *fuste* : *praste*; 3392 ff. *breste* : *loste* : *caste* : *creste*. Many other instances of inexact correspondence of vowels in the rime might be cited, such as 2810 ff. *socoure* : *indure* : *stoure* : *coloure*. There are also many instances where the consonants do not correspond; e.g. 1380 ff. *take* : *lake* : *make* : *shape* (similar 1468 ff.); 368 ff. *sone* : *done* : *mone* : *come* (similar 2062 ff.); 2508 ff. *bydene* : *bytvene* : *zeme* : *bydene* (similar 2669 ff.); 2660 ff. *heste* : *pees* : *resse* : *lese* (also 2684 ff.); 3858 ff. *land* : *found* : *wode* : *strond* (where the first two words should no doubt be emended to *lond* : *fond*); 3272 ff. *spede* : *bede* : *lende* : *stede*. Of especially frequent occurrence in our poem is the riming of *f(f)*, *th* and *gh* (labial, dental and guttural spirants) with one another—so of *ff* with *th* in 529 ff. *lyff* : *swithe* : *kithe* : *blithe*, and similarly, 632 ff., 865 ff., 1561 ff., 1609 ff., 2015 ff., 3566 ff., 3598 ff., 3699 ff.—of *f* with *gh* in 840 ff. *thought* : *wrought* : *brought* : *lofte* (similar 1966 ff.)—of *th* and *gh* in 2677 ff. *inoughe* : *treuthe* : *boughe* : *inoghe*.

I have already referred to the numerous instances where the plural of *knight*¹ also disturbs the rime.

Finally it will be observed that our poet like most of the romance writers makes a large use of alliteration in addition to rime. According to Dr. Seyferth's counting (p. 61) about forty-two per cent. of the lines of our poem show alliteration—in all but a few instances consonantal.

§ 5. AUTHORSHIP.

In a note to his discussion of the sources of Malory (p. 250, note 2) Dr. Sommer has thrown out the suggestion that 'Le Morte Arthur' is by the same author as 'The Lyfe of Ipomydon,' also contained in MS. Harley 2252. The only reasons he offers, however, for this supposition are (1) that the 'Lyfe of Ipomydon,' or 'Ipomedon B,' as it is generally called, is in the same handwriting as the first part of 'Le Morte Arthur' (ll. 1-1091); (2) that the relation of 'Le Morte Arthur,' to the Prose-Lancelot (the source of 'Le Morte Arthur,' ll. 1-1181, as Dr. Sommer holds) is the same as that of 'Ipomedon B' to its source. With reference to the first of these points, the fact that the same scribe copied the two romances is, of course, no argument whatever for identity of authorship; and with reference to the second, since I have shown, as I believe I have, that

¹ See note above, p. xxiv.

the Prose-Lancelot in its existing form is not the source of any part of 'Le Morte Arthur,' there is no basis of analogy in this case.

One may add, moreover, on this subject that apart from the difference in metrical form ('Ipomedon B' is in short rimed couplets) there are marked differences of style between the two works. In the case of 'Ipomedon B' the narrative is much more condensed than in 'Le Morte Arthur.' Then, the latter poem abounds in the usual formulas of the romances to a far greater degree than 'Ipomedon B.' *Is not to hyde*, etc., are pressed into service by the author of 'Le Morte Arthur' to an extent that is hardly exceeded in the case of any of the other Middle English romances, whereas such expressions are not particularly frequent in 'Ipomedon B.'

Dr. Paul Seyferth in his dissertation on our poem¹ has still further called attention to the pretty frequent use which the author of 'Le Morte Arthur' makes of the words *layne* (= deny) and *thro* (= bold, fierce) in his rimes (*layne* thirteen times, *thro* twelve times), whilst these words do not occur at all in 'Ipomedon B.'² He points out, moreover, that the form *yode* occurs in rime fourteen times in 'Le Morte Arthur' (*yede* occurs twelve times), but in 'Ipomedon B' does not occur at all (*yede* occurs eight times). Still further, the infinitive *bene* which occurs seven times in rhyme in 'Le Morte Arthur' does not occur at all in 'Ipomedon B,' and *sene* (infinitive) which occurs four times in rhyme in the former is not found at all in the latter (although it has *se* sixteen times). On the other hand, we find *gone* (infinitive) eleven times in the rhymes of 'Ipomedon B' (*go* ten times), but only *go* (twelve times) in 'Le Morte Arthur.'³

In conclusion, we may safely assume that a poem which is so completely in the usual romance style was the work of a professional minstrel. The fact which Dr. Seyferth points⁴ out that there is no mention of minstrels in the poem cannot be allowed any weight as against the evidence of style.

¹ Sprache und Metrik des mittellenglischen strophischen Gedichtes 'Le Morte Arthur' und sein Verhältnis zu 'The Lyfe of Ipomydon,' Berlin, 1895, see pp. 76 ff.

² Dr. Seyferth's statistics regarding the relative occurrence of words of romance and Scandinavian origin in the two poems do not seem to me to have much force.

³ Dr. Seyferth presents other statistics besides these, but the above points are the telling ones, as it seems to me. It is safer, perhaps, not to use the great number of examples of *was* for *was* which he cites, since they are based on changes in the MS. readings which at best must remain uncertain, especially in view of our poet's tolerance for inexact rhymes.

⁴ Page 77.

§ 6. STYLE.

Readers generally will hardly go so far as Mr. W. W. Newell in pronouncing our poem an "exquisitely beautiful work,"¹ yet I should say for my own part that it is only the adverb which we have a right to demur to here. Our poet lays himself open to criticism most of all in the matter of rimes. As far as inexactness goes, he has, of course, suffered much at the hands of his scribes, yet there remain too large a number of instances which cannot thus be explained away. Worse than this, however, is his constant use of the same rime-words, in which respect, owing to the exigencies of his eight-lined stanza, no doubt, he seems to me to sin beyond what we find elsewhere even in the Middle English romances. The ordinary formulas of the romances, moreover, seem to me to be more frequently repeated in this work than in any other. Such are the special limitations of our poem, to say nothing of those which it has in common with all Middle English romances. We have here, however, a famous and often lovely story told in a style of charming *naïveté* which stands in striking contrast to the ornate and courtly prose of the Old French romances to which his originals belonged. In the English poem indeed we breathe almost the atmosphere of the ballad. Yet it is doubtful whether there is anything in the Vulgate-Lancelot that brings home to our hearts more directly the pathos of the tragedy of Guinevere and Lancelot than that exclamation of the knights :

"Allas, they sayd, Launcelot du lake
That euyr shuld distow se the quene!" (ll. 796 f.)²

The reputation of our poem has been eclipsed in a large measure by that of the 'Morte Arthure' of the Lincoln MS. The many problems connected with the origin of that poem which have given rise to such prolonged controversy, and the fact that in parts it represents elements of Arthurian tradition which but for it would have been lost, have drawn the attention of the learned world to it in an unusual degree. It illustrates, moreover, that curious revival of alliterative verse which is one of the most interesting phenomena of fourteenth century literature in England. The Harleian 'Morte

¹ See passage quoted in note above, p. xv. Mr. Newell says even more enthusiastically ('King Arthur and the Table Round,' II, p. 264): "The noble conclusion, scarce rivalled in its way in English literature, makes a grand and fitting close to Arthurian Story."

² There are passages in the Vulgate-Lancelot corresponding to this, but they do not produce the same effect.

Arthur' has none of these adventitious sources of interest, nor can one claim for it the rush and vigour of the better-known romance. On the other hand, it is free from the uncouthness which, as I think even professional students will usually find, renders the reading at one time of any considerable portion of the poem of the Lincoln MS. a labour that is by no means light. The main story and the episodes our poem embraces, moreover, far surpass in human interest those of the alliterative poem, as indeed is shown perhaps by the fact that it is the material of the former and not of the latter which has entered into the life-blood of English literature in later centuries. This then, along with its quiet, simple beauty, constitutes the chief claim of our old romance to consideration by the modern world—namely, that it is the earliest work in English verse of all that have survived to present the sorrows of the 'Lily Maid of Astolat' and the story moreover of the end of the Table Round in just that form which seems surest of immortality.

Le Morte Arthur.

[*Harleian MS. 2252.*]

(1)

Lordingis that ar leff And dere,
 lystenyth and I shaH you teH
 By old[e] dayes what aunturs were
 Amonge oure eldris þat by-felle :
 In Arthur dayes, that noble kinge,
 By-felle Aunturs ferly fele,
 And I shaH telle of there endinge
 That mykeH wiste of wo and wele.

[leaf 86]
 The poet is
 going to tell
 of adventures
 in Arthur's
 days.

4

8

(2)

The knightis of the table Round,
 The sangrayle whan they hað sought,
 Aunturs that they by-fore them found
 Fynissid and to end[e] brought ;
 Their enemyes they bette & bound,
 For gold on lyff they lefte them noght.
 Foure yere they lyved sound,
 Whan they had these werkis wroght,

After the
 quest of the
 Holy Grail
 was ended,
 the knights
 of the Round
 Table lived
 four years in
 quiet.

12

16

(3)

Tille on a tyme þat it by-felle
 The kinge in bed lay by the quene,
 Off Aunturs they by-ganne to telle,
 Many that in þat land had bene :
 "Sir, yif that it were youre wille,
 Of a wondir thinge I wolð you mene,
 How your courte by-gynnyth to spiH
 Off duoghty knightis aH by-dene ;

20

Queen Gui-
 nevere begins
 to fear a
 decline in
 the renown
 of Arthur's
 Court,

24

(4)

Syr, your honour by-gynnyys to falle,
 That wount was wide in world to sprede,
 MORTE ARTHUR.

B

2 *By the Queen's advice Arthur proclaims a tournament.*

Off launcelott and of other aȝ
 That euyr so doughty were in dede." 28
 " Dame, there-to thy counseȝ I calle :
 What were best for suche a nede ?"
 " yiff ye your honoure holdȝ shalle,
 A turnement were best to bede, 32

and advises
[leaf 86, back]
him to pro-
claim a
tournament.

(5)

For-why that Auntre shaȝ by-gynne
 And by spoke of on euery syde,
 That knightis shaȝ there worship wynne
 To dede of Armys for to Ryde. 36
 Sir, lettis thus youre courte no blynne
 But lyve in honour and in pride."
 " Certys, dame," the kinge said thenne,
 " Thys ne shaȝ no lenger abyde." 40

(6)

A turnement the king lett bede,
 At Wynchester shuldȝ it be,
 Yonge Galehoȝ was goodȝ in nede,
 The Chefteyne of the Crye was he, 44
 With knightis þat were stiff on stede,
 That ladyes and maydens might se
 Who that beste were of dede
 Thrughe doughtynesse to have the gre. 48

Arthur has
a tournament
at Win-
chester pro-
claimed in
which
Galehod is to
be leader.

(7)

Knightis Arme them by-dene
 To the turnemente to Ride,
 With sheldis brode and helmys shene
 To wynne grete honoure and pride. 52
 launcelot lefte withe the quene
 And seke he lay that ylke tyde ;
 for loue þat was theym by-twene
 he made inchessoun for to abyde. 56

The knights
go to the
tournament,
but Lancelot
stays behind
to see the
queen.

(8)

The kynge satte vppon his stede
 And forthe is went vppon his way ;
 Sir Agraveyne for suche a nede
 At home by-lefte, for soth to say, 60

Agraveyne
also stays
at home

For men told in many a thode	
That launcelot by the quene lay :	to watch Launcelot and the quene.
For to take them with the dede	Just etc.
he Awaytes both nyght and day.	64

(9)

launcelott forth wendys he,	
Unto the chambyr to the quene,	When Launce- lot goes to the quene's chamber,
And sette hym downe vpon his kne	
And salues there that lady shene.	68
"launcelott, what dostow here with me !	she is alarmed lest they should be discovered.
The kinge is went and þe courte by-dene ;	
I drede we shall discoverid be,	
Off the loue is vs by-twene ;	72

(10)

Sir agravayne at home is he,	
nyght & day he waytes vs two."	
"Nay," he sayd, "my lady fre,	
I ne thinke not it shall be so ;	Launcelot says that he has come to take leave of her.
I come to take my leue of the,	76
Oute of courte or that I go."	
"ya swithe þat thou Armyd be,	
For thy dwellynge me is full woo."	80

(11)

launcelott to his chambyr yede,	
There Riche atyre lay hym by-fore,	He goes to his own chamber, armes himself,
Armyd hym in noble wede,	
Off that Armure gentylly was shore ;	84
Swerd and sheld were good at nede	
In many batayles þat he had bore,	
And horsyd hym on a grey stede	
kyng Arthur had hym yeve by-fore ;	88

(12)

haldys he none high way,	
The knight þat was hardy and fre,	and avoiding the high ways hastens toward Winchester.
Bot hastis bothe nyght and day	
Faste toward that Riche Cite,—	92

Off biaute and of bounthe,
And sithe is none so moche of myght,
At every dede beste is he,
And sithe he nold it wist no wight,¹ 128

(17)

Sir Erwayn, wiþ we done hym byde ;
he wenys þat we know hym noght."
"Sir, it is better lette hym Ride
And lette hym do as he hath thocht ; 132
he wolle be here nere by-syde,
Sithe he þus ferre hedyr hath sought ;
We shalle hym know by his dede
And by the hors þat he hath brought." 136

Arthur
wishes to
detain him
but is dis-
[leaf 88]
suaded.

(18)

An Erle woundyd there be-syde,
The lord of Ascolot was hight ;
launcelot gonne thedyr Ride
And sayd he wolle there dwell aȝ night ; 140
They resseyvid hym wiþ grete pryde.
A Riche soper there was dight ;
his name ganȝe he hele and hyde
And sayd he was a strange knight. 144

Lancelot
rides to the
dwelling of
the lord of
Ascalot and
is well re-
ceived.

(19)

Thanne had the erle sonnys two
That were knightis makidȝ newe ;
In þat tyme was the maner so,
Whan yonge knightis shuld sheldis show, 148
Tille þe friste yere were agoo,
To bere Armys of one hewe,
Rede or white, yelew or bloo ;
There-by men yonge knightis knew. 152

This lord had
two sons,
recently
knighted,
and, as with
other young
knights in
the first
year of
kighthood,
their arms
were of one
colour.

(20)

As they satte at there soper,
launcelot to the erle spake thare :
"Sir, ys here Any Bachelere
That to the turnament wolle fare ?" 156
¹ MS. might.

Lancelot
inquires
whether there
is any young
bachelor

6 *Lancelot borrows armour and is loved by the Maid of Ascalot.*

there who is
going to the
tournament.
The lord of
Ascalot
wishes one of
his sons to go,
and Lancelot
agrees.

"I haue two sonnys that me is dere,
And now that oonne is seke full sare ;
So in companye þat he were
myne other sonne I wolde were thare." 160

(21)

"Sir, and thy sonne wille thedir Right,
The lenger I wolle hym abyde,
And helpe hym there with all my myght
[leaf 86, back] That hym none harme shaft be-tyde." 164
"Sir, the semys a noble kn[i]ght,
Courtseye and hend, is not to hyde ;
At morow shaft ye dyne and dight,
Togedir I rede welle þat ye Ride." 168

(22)

For the sake
of disguise)
Lancelot
wishes to
borrow a suit
of armour.

"Syr, of one thinge I wolle you mynne
And be-seche you for to spede,
yif here were Any Armure Inne,
That I might borow it to this dede." 172

The lord of
Ascalot gives
him the
armour of
his son who
is ill.

"Sir, my sonne lieth seke here-in ;
Take his Armure and his stede ;
For my sonnys men shaft you kenne,
Off Rede shaft be your bothis wede." 176

(23)

The daughter
of the lord of
Ascalot falls
in love with
Lancelot.

Therle had a doughter þat was hym dere,
Mykeft launcelott she beheld ;
hyr Rode was rede as blossom on brere
Or floure þat springith in the feld ; 180
Glad she was to sitte hym nere,
The noble knight vndir sheld ;
Wepinge was hyr moste chere,
So mykeft on hym hyr herte gan held. 184

(24)

Vp than Rose þat mayden stille
And to hyr chamber wente she tho ;
Downe vppon hir bedde she felle,
That nighe hyr herte brast in two. 188

launcelot wiste what was hyr wyll,
 Welle he knew by other mo,
 hyr brother klepitte he hym tylle
 And to hyr chamber gonne they go ;

Lancelot
 recognises
 the cause of
 her sorrow,

192

(25)

he satte hym downe for the maydens sake
 vpon hyr bedde there she lay,
 Courtessely to hyr he spake,

and tries to
 comfort her.

196

For to comforte þat fayre may ;

In hyr Armys she gan hym take

And these wordis ganne she say :

[leaf 80]

“ Sir, bot yif that ye it make,

Saff my lyff no leche may.”

When she
 confesses
 her love,

200

(26)

“ lady,” he sayd, “ thou moste lette,

For me ne giff the no-thinge Ille ;

In Another stede myne hert is sette,

It is not at myne owne wille ;

he says that
 his heart is
 already given
 away, but
 that he
 will be her
 knight.

204

In erthe is no thinge that shaft me lette

To be thy knight lowde and stille ;

A-nother tyme we may be mette

Whan thou may better speke thy fille.”

208

(27)

“ Sithe I of the ne may haue more,

As thou arte hardy knight and fre,

In the turnement þat thou wold bere

Sum signe of myne þat men might se.”

212

“ lady, thy sleve thou shalte of-shere,

I wolle it take for the love of the ;

So did I neuyr no ladyes ere

Bot one that most hathe lovid me.”

He agrees to
 wear her
 sleve as a
 sign in the
 tournament.

216

(28)

On the morow whan it was day

They dyned and made them yare,

And þan they went forthe on there way

To-gedyr as they bretherne were.

The next day
 Lancelot
 rides forth
 with the
 brother of the
 Maid of
 Ascalot to

220

8 *An aunt of Lancelot's companion entertains them.*

take part
in the
tournament.

They mette a squyer by the way
That frome the turnament gan fare,
And askyd yif he couthe them say
Whiche party was the bygger thare. 224

(29)

They learn
that Arthur's
party in the
tournament
[leaf 89, back]
includes the
best knights,

"Sir Galehod hathe folke þe more,
For sothe, lordingis, as I you telle,
But Arthur is the bigger there ;
he hath knightis stiff and felle ; 228
They Ar bold and breame as bare,
Evwayne and boert and lyonelle."
Therlys sonne to hym spake thare :
"Sir, with them I rede we dwelle." 232

(30)

so, to win
greater glory,
they decide to
aid the other
side.

launcelotte spake, as I you rede :
"Sithe they ar men of grete valour,
how might we amonge them spede
There alle are stiffe & stronge in stowre ? 236
helpe we them þat hath most nede ;
Ageyne the beste we shaft welles dore ;
And we might there do Any dede,
It wold vs torne to more honour." 240

(31)

They decide
to spend that
night outside
the city at
the house of
an aunt of
the young
knight of
Ascalot.

launcelot spekis in that tyde
As knight þat was hardy and fre :
"To-night with-oute I rede we byde ;
The presse is grete in the Cite." 244
"Sir, I haue An Aunte here beside,
A lady of swith grete biaute ;
Were it your wille thedir to Ride,
Glad of vs than wold she be." 248

(32)

They go to
that lady's
castle and are
well received.

Tho to the castelle gonne they fare,
To the lady fayre and bright ;
Blithe was the lady thare
That they wold dwelle with hyr þat night ; 252

hastely was there soper yare
 Off mete and drinke rychely dight.
 Onne the morow gonne they dyne & fare,
 Both launcelott and þat other knight. 256

(33)

Whan they come in-to þe feld,
 Myche there was of game & play ;
 A while they hovid & by-held
 how Arthurs knightis Rode that day. 260
 Galehodis party by-gan to held,
 On fote his knightis ar lað away ;
 launcelott stiff was vndyr shekð,
 Thinkis to helpe, yif that he may. 264

At the tour-
 nament on
 the next day
 they assist
 Galehod's
 party which
 [leaf 90]
 is being
 worsted.

(34)

Be-syde hym come þan sir Evwayne,
 Brene as Any wilde bore ;
 launcelott springis hym ageyne,
 In Rede armys þat he bare ; 268
 A dynte he yaff wíth mekiht mayne,
 Sir Evwayne was vn-horsid thare,
 That alle men wente he had bene slayne,
 So was he woundyd wondyr sare. 272

In the conflict
 Lancelot
 unhorses
 Evwayne.

(35)

Sir boerte thoughte no-thinge goodð,
 Whan Sir Evwayne yn-horsid was ;
 Forthe he springis as he were wode
 To launcelot, wíth-outen lees ; 276
 launcelot hytte hym on the hode,
 The nexte way to ground he chese ;
 Was none so stiff agayne hym stode,
 Fulle thynne he made the thickest prees. 280

He also
 unhorses
 Boerte

(36)

Sir lyonelle be-ganne to tene
 And hastely he made hym bowne,
 To launcelott wíth herte kene
 he rode wíth helme and swerd[e] browne ; 284

launcelott hitte hym, as I wene,
 Throughe the helme in-to þe Crowne,
 That euyr after it was sene ;
 and Lyonelle. Bothe hors and man there yede adowne ; 288

(37)

The knights agree that this must be Lancelot, but are puzzled by the [leaf 90, back] Ascalot sign he wears.

The knightis gadrid̃ togedir thare
 And gan *wit* Crafte there counselle take ;
 Suche a knight was neuyr are
 But it were launcelot du lake ; 292
 Bot, for the sleve on his Creste was thar,
 For launcelot wold they hym noght take ;
 For he bare nevir none suche by-fore
 But it were for the quenys sake : 296

(38)

✓ “ Off Ascolot he neuyr was
 That thus welle beris hym to-day.”
 Ector sayd, *with*-outen lees,
 What he was he wold assay. 300
 A noble stede Ector hym chese
 And forthe rydis glad and gay ;
 launcelot he mette a-mydde þe prese,
 By-twene them was no chi[l]dis play ; 304

Ector now
 assails
 Lancelot and
 wounds him.

(39)

Ector smote with herte good̃
 To launcelot that ilke tyde ;
 Throughe helme in-to his hede it yode
 That nighe loste he aȝ his *pride* ; 308
 launcelot hytte on the hood̃
 That his hors felle and he be-syde.
 launcelot blyndis in his blode,
 Oute of the feld full̃ faste gan Ride ; 312

(40)

Lancelot,
 sorely hurt,
 rides away to
 a forest.

Oute of the feld they Reden thoo
 To a forest highe and hore.
 Whan they come by them one two,
 Off his helme he takis thore. 316

“Sir,” he sayd, “me is full woo,
 I drede that ye be hurte full sore.”
 “Nay,” he sayd, “it is not so,
 But fayne at Rest I wold we were.” 320

(41)

“Sir, myne Aunte is here be-syde,
 There we bothe were all nighte;
 Were it youre wille thedir to Ride,
 She wolle us helpe *with* all hyr might, 324
 And send for lechis this ylke tyde,
 youre woundis for to hele and dight;
 And I my-self wille *with* you abyde
 And be youre servante and youre knight.” 328

He is per-
 suaded to go
 again to the
 castle of the
 aunt of the
 young knight
 of Ascalot.
 [leaf 91]

(42)

To the castelle they toke the way,
 To the lady fayre and hend;
 She sent for lechis, as I you say,
 That wounyd bothe ferre and hend, 332
 But by the morow that it was day
 In bed he might hym-self not wend;
 So sore woundyd there he lay
 That weñ nighe had he sought his end. 336

There doctors
 attend him.

(43)

Tho kinge arthur *with* mykeñ pride
 Callid his knightis all hym by
 And sayd a mounth he wold there byde
 And in wynchester lye; 340
 heraudis he dyd go and Ride
 Another turnamente for to Crye;
 “This knight wolle be here nere be-syde,
 for he is woundyd bitterlye.” 344

King Arthur
 has another
 tournament
 proclaimed
 to draw forth
 the strange
 knight again.

(44)

Whan the lettres made were
 The heraudis forth *with* them yede,
 Throughe yngland for to fare,
 Another turnament for to bede; 348

Back them buske and make them yare
 Alle that stiff were on stede.
 Thus these lettris sent were
 To tho that doughty were of dede, 352

(45)

Tille on a tyme þat it be-felle
 An heraude comys by the way
 And at the castelle a night gan dwelle
 There as launcelot woundyd lay, 356
 And of the turnamente gon telle
 That shuld come on the sonday.
 launcelot sighes wondyr stille
 And sayd : "allas and weH-a-way ! 360

(46)

[leaf 91, back] Whan knightis wynne worship and pride,
 Som Auntre shaft hold me a-way,
 As a coward for to a-byde.
 This turnamente, for sothe to say, 364
 for me is made this ylke tyde ;
 Though I shuld dye this ylke day,
 Certis I shalle thedyr Ride." 367
 [. . . . no gap in the MS.] 367 b

Lancelot
 vows that he
 will go to the
 tournament,

(47)

The leche Aunswerd also sone
 And sayd : "syr, what haue ye thought ?
 Alle the Crafte that I haue done
 I wene it wille you helpe Right noght. 371
 There is no man vndir the mone,
 By hym þat all this world hath wroght,
 Might saue youre lyff to that tyme come
 That ye vpon your stede were brought !" 375

though the
 physican
 says it will
 be his death.

(48)

"Certis, though I dye this day,
 In my bedde I wolle not lye ;
 Yit had I levir do what I may
 Than here to dye thus cowardelye." 379

<p>The leche anone than went his way And wold no lenger dwelle hym by ; his woundis scryved and stille he lay And in his bedde he swownyd thrye.</p>	<p>The physician goes away, but when Lancelot's agitation causes his wounds to break open,</p> <p>383</p>
---	--

(49)

<p>The lady wept as she were wode, Whan she sawe he dede wold be, Therlis sonne with sory mode The leche agayne clepis he And sayd : " thou shalt haue yiftis good, For-why pat thou wilt dwelle with me." Craftely than staunchid he his blode And of good comforte bad hym be.</p>	<p>387</p> <p>he is per- suaded to return.</p> <p>391</p>
---	---

(50)

<p>The heraude than wente on his way At morow whan the day was light Also swithe as euyr he may To Wynchester that ylke night ; he salued the kinge, for soth to say— By hym satte syr Evwayne the knight— And sithe he told upon his playe What he had herd and sene with sight :</p>	<p>The herald goes back to Winchester,</p> <p>395</p> <p>[leaf 92]</p> <p>399</p>
---	---

(51)

<p>" Off alle pat I haue sene with sight Wondir thought me nevir more Thanne me dyd of a folyd knight That in his bed lay woundid sore ; he myght not heve his hede vp-Right For alle the world haue wonne thare ; For Angwisshe pat he ne Ride myght Alle his woundis scryved were."</p>	<p>and tells of the wounded knight who was so eager to ride in the tournament.</p> <p>403</p> <p>407</p>
--	---

(52)

<p>Sir Evwayne than spekis wordis fre And to the kyng sayd he there : " Certis, no cowarde knight is he ; Allas ! that he nere hole and fere !</p>	<p>Evwayne guesses that it is the strange knight of the last tourna- ment.</p> <p>411</p>
---	---

Welle I wote þat it is he
 That we alle of vnhorsyd were.
 the tournament is beste lette be,
 For sothe that knight may not come there." 415

(53)

It is decided
 that the
 tournament
 which had
 been pro-
 claimed shall
 not be held,
 and the king
 goes to
 Camelot.

There turnement was than no more
 But this departith alle the prese.
 knightis toke there leve to fare,
 Ichone his owne way hym chese. 419
 To kamelot the kynge went there,
 There as quene gaynore was ;
 he wente haue found launcelot thare ;
 A-way he was, with-outen lese. 423

(54)

When Lance-
 lot is well
 enough,
 the lord of
 Ascalot takes
 him to his
 castle.

Launcelot sore woundyd lay ;
 knightis sought hym fuþ wyde.
 Therle sonne night and day
 Was alle-way hym be-syde ; 427
 Therle hym-self whan he ryde may
 Brought hym home with mykeþ pride
 And made hym bothe game & play
 Tille he might bothe go and Ryde. 431

(55)

[leaf 92, back]
 Boerte and
 Lyonelle go
 forth to seek
 Lancelot.

So does Ector
 too.

Boerte and lyonelle than sware,
 and at the kinge there leve toke there,
 Ageyne they wold come nevir mare
 Till they wiste where launcelot were. 435
 Ector went with them thare
 To seche his brodyr þat hym was dere.
 many a land they ganne through fare
 And sought hym bothe ferre and nere, 439

(56)

They come
 to Ascalot
 and find
 Lancelot
 walking on
 the walls.

Tille on a tyme þat it by-felle
 That they come by that ylke way,
 And at the castelle at mete gan dweþ,
 There as launcelott woundyd lay ; 443

launcelot they saw, as I you telle
Walke on the wallis hym to play ;
On knees for Ioye aH they felle,
So blithe men they were that day. 447

(57)

Whan launcelott saw tho ylke thre
That he in world[e] louyd beste,
A merier metinge might no man se,
And sithe he ledde them to Reste. 451
Therle hym-self, glad was he,
That he had gotten siche a geste ;
So was the mayden feyre and fre
That alle hyr loue on hym had keste. 455

(58)

Whan they were to soper dight,
Bordis were sette and clothis spradde,
Therlis doughter and the knight
To-gedir was sette, as he them badde, 459
Therlys sonnys þat bothe were wight
to serue them were nevir sadde,
And therle hym-selfe *with* alle his mygh[t]
To make them bothe blyth and glad. 463

(59)

Bot Boert, euyr in mynd he thoghte
That launcelot had bene woundyd sore.
“Sir, were it your wille to hele it noght
Bot telle where ye thus hurte were?” 467
“By hym þat alle this world hath wrought,”
launcelot hym-self swore,
“The dynte shall be full dere bought,
yif euyr we may mete vs more !” 471

(60)

Ector ne liked that no wight,
The wordis that he herd there ;
For sorow he loste both strength & might ;
The colours changid in his leyre. 475

All reioice at
this meeting.

At supper
that night
Boerte asks
Lancelot
where he
received his
wound.

[leaf 98]

Lancelot
vows venge-
ance for the
wound.

Ector (who
had wounded
him) is
alarmed at
this.

Boerte than sayd these wordis Right :
 "Ector, thou may make yvelle chere ;
 For sothe it is no coward knight
 That thou arte of I-manased here." 479

(61)

Lancelot now
 learns who
 gave him the
 wound.
 "Ector," he sayd, "where thou it were
 That woundid me thus wondir sore ?"
 Ector, aunswerd with symple chere :
 "lord, I ne wiste þat ye it wore, 483
 A dynte of you I had there,
 felyd I nevir none so sore."
 Sir lyonelle by god þan swore
 That "myne wolle sene be euyr more." 487

(62)

Sir Boerte than answerd as tye
 As knight þat wise was vndir wede :
 "I hope þat none of vs was quite,
 I had oon þat to ground I yede. 491
 Sir, your brodyr shaft ye not wite,
 now knowes either others dede ;
 now know ye how Ector can smyte
 To helpe you whan ye haue nede." 495

(63)

and Lancelot
 reassures
 Ector, saying
 that he loves
 him all the
 better for the
 proof of
 strength he
 has given.
 launcelot loughe with herte fre
 That Ector made so mekiþ Sitte :
 "Brother, no thinge drede thou the,
 For I shalle be bothe hole and quite. 499
 Though thou haue sore woundid me,
 There-of I shaft the nevir wite ;
 [leaf 93, back] Bot euyr the better loue I the,
 Such a dynte that thou can smyte." 503

(64)

Lyonelle,
 Boerte and
 Ector return
 to court,
 Than vpon the thrid day
 They toke there leue for to fare,
 To the courte they wille away,
 For he wille dwelle a while thare. 507

“Grete welle my lorde, I you pray,
 And telle my lady how I fare,
 And say I wylle come whan I may;
 And byddith hyr longe no-thinge sare.”

taking mes-
 sages from
 Lancelot.

511

(65)

They toke there leve, *with*-outen lees,
 And wightely wente vppon there way;
 To the courte the way they chese,
 There as the quene Genure lay.
 The kinge to the foreste is
With knightis hym for to play;
 Good space they had *with*-outen prese
 There erand to the quene to say.

515

When they
 arrive,
 the king is in
 the forest.

519

(66)

They knelyd downe by-fore the quene,
 The knightis þat were wise of lere,
 And sayd they had launcelot sene
 And thre dayes *with* hym were,
 And how þat he had woundyd bene,
 And seke he had lye full sore.
 “Or ought longe ye shaft hym sene;
 he had you longe no thyng sore.”

They give
 the queen
 news of
 Lancelot,

523

527

(67)

The quene loughe *with* herte fre
 Whan she wiste he was on lyff.
 “O, worthy god, what wele is me!
 Why ne wiste my lord it also swithe!”
 To the foreste rode these knightis thre,
 To the kinge it to kithe;
 Ihesu criste þan thankis he
 For was he nevir of word so blithe.

and she
 rejoices that
 he is alive.

531

So do the
 king and
 Gawayne
 when they
 hear it.

535

(68)

he klepyd Sir Gawayne hym nere
 And sayd: “certis, that was he
 That the rede armys bere;
 Bot, now he lyffis, welle is me.”
 MORTE ARTHUR.

[leaf 94]

539

C

Gawayne answerd with myld chere,
 As he that Ay was hend and fre :
 " Was neuyr tithandis me so dere,
 Bot sore me longis launcelot to se." 543

(69)

Gawayne
 goes at once
 to Ascalot,

At the kinge and at the quene
 Sir Gawayne toke his leve that tyde,
 And sithe at alle the courte by-dene,
 And buskis hym with mekyh pryde 547
 Tille Ascalot, with-outen wene,
 Also faste as he might Ryde ;
 Tille that he haue launcelot sene
 Night ne day ne wolle he hyde. 551

(70)

but before
 he arrives
 Lancelot
 departs, to
 the great
 sorrow of the
 Maid of
 Ascalot.

By that was launcelot hole and fere,
 Buskis hym and makis aȝ yare,
 his leue hathe he take there ;
 The mayden wepte for sorow & Care. 555
 " Sir, yif that youre willis were,
 Sithe I of the ne may haue mare,
 Som thinge ye wolde be-leue me here
 To loke on whan me longith sare." 559

(71)

He leaves
 his own
 armour
 behind at
 Ascalot.

launcelot spake with herte fre,
 For to comforte that lady hende :
 " Myne Armure shaȝ I leue with the
 And in thy brothers wille I wend ; 563
 loke thou ne longe not after me
 For here I may no lenger lend.
 longe tyme ne shalle it noȝt be
 That I ne shalle eyther come or send." 567

(72)

Gawayne
 arrives
 [leaf 94, back]

launcelot is Redy for to Ride
 And on his way he went forth Right ;
 Sir Gawayn come aftir on a tyde
 And askis after suche a knyghte ; 571

They reseyved hym *with grete pride*,
 A Riche soper there was dight,
 And sayd, in herte is noght to hyde,
 A-way he was for fourtenyght.

and is
 hospitably
 treated.

575

(73)

Sir Gaweyne gon that mayden take,
 And satte hym by that swete wight,
 And spake of launcelot de lake ;
 In alle the world nas suche a knight.
 The mayden there of launcelot spake,
 Said aȝ hyr loue was on hym light,
 " For his leman he hathe me take,
 his Armure I you shew[e] mighte."

In convers-
 ation with
 Gawayne the
 Maid of
 Ascalot
 confesses her
 love for
 Lancelot, and
 says that he
 has taken
 her as his
 lady-love.

579

583

She cites the
 possession of
 his armour
 as proof.

(74)

" Now, damysselle," he sayd Anone,
 " And I Am glad þat it is so ;
 Suche a lemman as thou haste oon
 In aȝ this world ne be no mo ;
 There is no lady of flesshe ne bone
 In this world so thryve or thro,
 Thoughe hyr herte were stele or stone,
 That might hyr loue hald hym fro.

587

591

(75)

But, damysselle, I be-seche the
 his sheld that ye wold me shewe ;
 launcelottis yif that it be,
 Be the coloures I it knew."
 The mayden was bothe hend & fre,
 And ledde hym to a chambyr newe ;
 launcelottis shekȝ she lette hym se,
 And aȝ his Armure forth she drewe.

At Gawayne's
 request,

595

599

she shows
 him Lance-
 lot's shield
 and armour.

(76)

hendely than syr Gawayne,
 To the mayden there he spake :
 " lady," he sayd, " wit/outen layne,
 This is launcelottis sheld de lake,

Gawayne
 recognizes
 the shield,

603

and says that
he is glad

[leaf 95]
that Lancelot
has taken her
for his lady-
ove.

Damesselle," he sayd, "I Am full fayne

That he the wold to lemman take,

And I *with* alle my myght and mayne

Wille be thy knight for his sake."

607

(77)

Gawayne thus spake *with* that swete wight

What his wille was for to say

Tille he was to bed I-digte;

Aboute hym was gamme and play.

611

he toke his leue at erle and knight

On the morow whan it was day,

And sithen at the mayden brighte,

And forthe he wente vpon his way.

615

He leaves
the next day,
and not
knowing
where to find
Lancelot
returns to
court,

(78)

he nyste where þat he mighte

ne where that launcelot wold lend,

For whan he was oute of sight,

he was fulle yvelle for to fynd.

619

he takis hym the way Right,

And to the courte gon he wend;

Glad of hym was kyng and knight,

For he was bothe corteysse and hend.

623

where he
is gladly
received.

(79)

Than it by-felle vpon a tyde,

The kinge stode by the quene & spake,

Sir gawayne standis hym be-syde,¹

Ichone tille other there mone gan make

627

how longe they might *with* bale abyde

The comynge of launcelot du lake;

In the courte was litelle pryde,

So sore they sighyd for his sake.

631

(80)

"Certis, yif launcelot were on lyff,

So longe fro courte he nold not be."

Sir gawayne answerd also swithe:

"There-of no wondir thinkith me;

635

Gawayne
tells at court
that Lancelot

¹ In the MS. this and the following line occupied the place which is filled in this edition by ll. 632-3. The scribe, however, observed his mistake and indicated the necessary correction.

The Queen grieves at Lancelot's reported infidelity. 21

The feyrest lady that is on lyff
 Tille his lemman chosen hath he ;
 Is noon of vs but wold be blithe
 Suche a semely for to see." 639

has chosen a
 lady-love.

(81)

The kinge Arthur was full blythe
 Off that tithingis for to lere,
 And askid syr Gawayne also swythe
 What mayden that it were. 643
 "Therlis doughter," he sayd as swithe,
 "Off Ascolot, as ye may here,
 There I was made glad & blithe.
 his sheld the mayde shewid me there." 647

[leaf 95, back]

When Arthur
 asks who
 it is, he says
 that it is the
 daughter of
 the earl of
 Ascalot.

(82)

The quene than said wordis no mo,
 Bot to hyr chambir sone she yede,
 And downe vppon hyr bed felle so
 That nighe of witte she wold wede. 651
 "Allas !" she sayd, "and weh-a-wo !
 That euyr I Aught lyff in lede ;
 The beste body is loste me fro
 That euyr in stoure by-strode stede." 655

The queen
 is almost
 distraught at
 the news of
 Lancelot's
 supposed
 infidelity.

(83)

ladyes that aboute hyr stode,
 That wiste of hyr previte,
 Bad hyr be of comforte gode,
 lette no man suche semblant se. 659
 A bed they made with sory mode,
 There-in they brought that lady fre ;
 Euyr she wepte as she were wode,
 Off hyr they had full grete pite. 663

(84)

So sore seke the quene lay,
 Off sorow might she nevir lette,
 Tille it felle vppon a day,
 Sir Lyonelle and Ector yede 667

Lyonelle and
 Ector meet

Lancelot in
the forest,

In-to the foreste, them to play,
That floured was and braunchid swete,
And as they went by the way,
With launcelot gonne they mete.

671

(85)

What woundyr was though they were blith
Whan they there master saw *with* sight!
On knees they felle also swithe
And *aH* they thankid god *aH*-myght;

675

[leaf 96]

Ioye it was to se and lythe
The metynge of the noble knighte.

who asks
after the
queen.

And sithe he freyned also swithe :
"how fares my lady brighte?"

679

(86)

They tell
him that
both she and
all the court
are in great
distress at
his absence.

Than answerd the knightis fre
And said that she was seke full sare :
"Grete doelle it is to here and se,
So mekylle she is in sorow and care ;
The kinge, a sory man ys he
In courte for that ye come no mare ;
Dede he wenys that ye be
And alle the courte both lasse & mare.

683

687

(87)

Sir, were it your wille *with* vs to fare,
For to speke *with* the quene,
Blithe I wote wele that she ware,
yif that she had you onys sene.
The kynge is mekille in sorow and care,
And so ys *aH* the courte by-dene ;
Dede they wene welles that ye Are
Frome courte for ye so longe haue bene."

691

695

(88)

Lancelot
decides to
return to the
court with
them.

he grauntis them at that ylke sythe
home that he wille *with* them Ride ;
There-fore the knightis were fulle blithe
And busked them *with* mykelle pride

699

To the courte also swithe ;
 Nyght ne day they nold abyde.
 The kinge and alle the courte was blithe,
 The tydandis whan they herde þat tyde. 703

(89)

The kinge stode in a toure on highe,
 Be-sydes hym standis syr Gawayne ;
 launcelotte whan that they sighe,
 Were nevir men on mold so fayne. 707
 They Ranne as swithe as eyr they might
 Oute at the gates hym Agayne ;
 Was nevir tidandis to them so light.
 The kinge hym kissyd and knight & swayne ; 711

The king,
 who is on
 a tower,
 sees him
 approaching.

(90)

To a chamber the kyng hym lad ;
 feyre in Armys they gon hym fold,
 And sette hym on A Riche bedde
 That sprad was with a clothe of gold ; 715
 To serve hym was there no man sad
 Ne dight hym as hym-self wold
 To make hym bothe blithe and glad ;
 And sithe Auntres he them told. 719

He is given
 a joyful
 reception,
 [leaf 96, back]

(91)

Thre dayes in courte he dwellid there
 That he ne spake not with the quene :
 So myche prees was Ay hym nere ;
 The kyng hym lad and courte by-dene. 723
 The lady, bright as blossom on brere,
 Sore she longid hym to sene ;
 Wepinge was hyr moste chere,
 Thoughe she ne durste hyr to no man mene. 727

but for three
 days he does
 not speak
 with the
 queen.

(92)

Than it felle vppon a day,
 The kinge gan on huntynge Ride
 In-to the foreste hym to playe,
 With his knightis be his syde ; 731

At last, when
 Arthur is out
 hunting,
 Lancelot goes
 to the queen's
 chamber.

launcelot longe in beð laye,
 With the quene he thought to byde ;
 To the chamber he toke the way
 And salues hyr *with* mekeð pryde ; 735

(93)

Friste he kissyð that lady shene
 And salues hyr *with* herte fre,
 And sithe the ladyes aȝ by-dene,
 For Ioye the teres Ranne on ther' ble. 739
 " Weȝ-a-way !" than sayd the quene,
 " launcelot, that I euyr the se !
 The loue þat hathe be vs by-twene
 That it shaȝ thus departed be ! 743

She re-
proaches him
in regard to
the Maid of
Ascalot.

(94)

Allas ! launcelot du lake,
 Sithe thou hast aȝ my hert in woldȝ
 Therlis doughter that thou woldȝ take
 Off ascalot, as men me toldȝ ! 747
 Now thou leuiste for hyr sake
 Alle thy dede of Armys boldȝ,
 I may wofully wepe and wake
 In clay tylle I be clongyn coldȝ. 751

[leaf 97]

(95)

She begs him
at least to
keep their
former rela-
tions secret.

But, launcelot, I be-seche the here,
 Sithe it nedelyngis shaȝ be so,
 That thou nevir more dyskere¹
 The loue that hathe bene be-twyxe vs two, 755
 Ne that she nevir be *with* the so dere
 Dedde of Armys þat thou be fro,
 That I may of thy body here,
 Sithe I shalle thus be-leve in woo." 759

(96)

launcelot fulle stille than stode,
 his herte was hevy as Any stone ;
 So sory he wexe in his mode,
 For Routhe hym thought it aȝ to-torne. 763

¹ MS. discourr.

"Madame," he said, "for crosse and Rode,

What by-tokenyth aȝ this mone?

By hym þat bought me with his blode,

Off these tydandes know I none;

767

Lancelot does
not under-
stand, and
in anger

(97)

But by these wordis thynkith me

A-way ye wold þat I ware;

Now haue good day, my lady fre,

For sothe thou seest me nevir mare."

771

Oute of the chambyr þan wendis he;

Now whethir his hert was full of Care!

The lady swownyd Sithes thre

Almost she slew hyr-self[e] thare.

775

he goes back
to the forest.

(98)

launcelot to his chambyr yede,

There his owne atyre in lay,

Armyd hym in a noble wede,

Though in his hert were liteȝ play;

779

Forth he spronge as sparke of glede,

Withe sory chere, for sothe to say;

Vp he worthis vpon his stede

And to a foreste he wendis a-way.

783

(99)

Tithyngis come in-to the halle

That launcelot was vpon his stede;

Oute than Ranne the knightis alle,

Off there witte as they wold wede;

787

Boerte de Gawnes and lyonelle

And Ector that doughty was of dede

Folowyn hym on horsys snelle,

Fulle lowde gonne they blowe and grede.

791

[leaf 97, back]

The knights
try to over-
take him

(100)

There might no man hym ovir-take,

he Rode in-to a forest grene;

Moche mone gonne they make

The knightis that were bold and kene.

795

but do not
succeed.

They blame
the queen for
his leaving
the court
again,

"Allas!" they sayd, "launcelot du lake,
That euyr shuldistor se the quene!"
And hyr they cursyd for his sake
That euyr loue was them by-twene.

799

(101)

They ne wiste nevir where to fare
Ne to what land þat he wold;
Ageyne they went with sighyng sare,
The knightis þat were kene & bold;
The quene they found in swownyng thare,
hyr comely tresses all vnfold;
They were so full of sorowe & Care
There was none hyr comfort wold.

803

807

and she her-
self is in deep
distress.

(102)

The king
hastens home
and learns
that Lancelot
is gone.

The kynge than hastis hym for his sake
And home þan come that ylke day,
And asked after launcelot du lake,
And they sayd: "he is gone away."
The quene was in hyr bed aȝ nakyd,
And sore seke in hyr chambyr lay,
So moche mone the kynge gon make,
There was no knight þat lust to playe.

811

815

(103)

He laments
that Lancelot
will never
stay at
[leaf 96]
court.

The kinge klepis Gawayne þat day
And alle his sorow told hym tulle:
"Now ys launcelot gone A-way
And come, I wote, he nevir wille."
he sayd "allas and wellaway!"
Sighed sore and gaff hym ylle:
"The lord that we have lovid aȝ-way,
In courte why nylle he nevir dwelle!"

819

823

(104)

Gawayne
offers to go

Gawayn spekis in that tyde
And to the kynge sayd he there:
"Sir, in this castelle shaȝ ye byde,
Comforte you and make good chere,

827

And we shaß bothe go and Ride in search of
him.
 In all landis ferre and nere ;
 So preuely he shall hym not hyde
 Throughe happe that we ne shall of hym here." 831

(105)

[**K**]nyghtis than sought hym wide,
 Off launcelot myght they not here,
 Tylle it felle vppon a tyde,
 quene Genure, bright as blossom on brere, 835
 To mete is sette that ylke tyde,
 And syr Gawayne satte hyr nere,
 And vppon that other syde
 A scottysse knight þat was hyr dere. 839

(106)

A squyer in the courte hath thought,
 That ylke day, yif that he myght,
 With a poyson þat he hath wrought
 To slae Gawayne, yif that he mighte ; 843
 In frute he hath it forthe brought
 And sette by-fore the quene bright ;
 An Appille ouereste lay on lofte,
 There the poyson was in dighte, 847

(107)

For he thoughte the lady bright
 Wold the beste to Gawayne bede,
 But she it yaff to the scottisshe knight,
 For he was of an vnkouth stede. 851
 There-of he ete a lyteß wight,
 Off tresoun toke there no man hede ;
 There he loste both mayne and might
 And died sone, as I you Rede. 855

(108)

They nyste what it myght by-mene,
 But vp hym sterte syr Gawayne,
 And sithen aß the courte by-dene,
 And ouyr the bord they haue hym drayne. 859

but the queen,
 not knowing
 that it was
 poisoned,
 gives it to a
 Scotch knight
 [leaf 98, back]
 who dies
 from it.

She laments
the accident.

"Wellaway!" than sayd the quene,
 "Thesu Criste! what may I sayne!
 Certis, now with all men wene
 My-self that I the knight haue slayne." 863

(109)

Triacle there was anone forth brought,
 The quene wende to save his lyff,
 But all that myght helpe hym noght,
 For there the knight is dede as swithe; 867
 So grete sorow the quene than wrought,
 Grete doele it was to se and lythe;
 "lorð, suche syttes me haue sought!
 Why ne may I nevir be blithe!" 871

(110)

The dead
knight is
buried in a
chapel in the
forest, and on
his tomb it is
inscribed
that the
queen had
slain him
with poison.

Knyghtis done none other myght,
 Bot beryed hym with doele I-noughe,
 At a chapel with Riche lyghte,
 In a foreste by a cloughe;¹ 875
 A Riche tounbe they dyd by dight,
 A Crafty clerke the lettres droughe,
 how there lay the shottysse knyght
 That quene Genure with poyson slough. 879

(111)

Shortly after
this, Sir
Mador, the
dead knight's
brother,
comes to
court.

Afyr thys a tyme by-felle,
 To the courte ther come a knyght,
 his brodyr he was, as I you telle,
 And syr mador for sothe he highte; 883
 he was an hardy man and snelle,
 In turnamente and eke in fight,
 And mykell louyd in Courte to duelle,
 [leaf 99] For he was man of myche myght. 887

(112)

Being one
day in the
forest,

Than it felle vpon a day,
 Sir mador wente with mekell pride
 In-to the foreste, hym for to play,
 That floured was and braunchid wyde; 891

¹ MS. swoughe. I have adopted here Seyferth's (p. 78) conjecture. Cp. l. 893.

he found a chapeH in his way,
 As he cam by a cloughis syde,
 There his owne brodyr lay,
 And there at masse he thought to abyde. 895

(113)

A Riche toumbe he found there dight
 With lettres that were fayre I-noughe ;
 A while he stode and Redde it Right,
 Grete sorow than to his herte droughe, 899
 he found the name of the scottyshe knight
 That quene Genure *with* poyssoun sloughe ;
 There he loste bothe mayne and myght
 And ouyr the toumbe he felle in swoughe. 903

he lights on
his brother's
tomb

and swoons
when he
reads the
inscription.

(114)

Off swownynge whan he myght awake,
 his herte was heuy as Any lede ;
 he sighed for his brothers sake,
 he ne wiste what was beste Rede ; 907
 The way to courte gan he take,
 Off no-thinge ne stode he drede ;
 A lovde Crye on the quene *gonne* make
 In chalengynge of his brothers dede. 911

When he
recovers,

he accuses
the queen.

(115)

The kynges fulle sore than gan hym drede,
 For he myght not be ageyne the Right ;
 The quene of witte wold¹ nyghe wede ;
 thoughe¹ put she agilte had no wight, 915
 She moste there by-know the dede,
 Or fynde a man for hyr to fight ;
 For welle she wiste to deth she yede
 yif she were on a queste of knightis. 919

(116)

Thoughe Arthur were kynges þe land to welk,
 he myght not be agayne the Righte ;
 A day he toke *with* spere and sheld¹
 To fynd a man for hyr to fight, 923

[leaf 90, back]
Arthur is
obliged to
appoint a day
when the
queen shall
be put to
death,

¹ *In the MS. That is written at the beginning of this line—by mistake.*

unless she
finds a
champion.

That she shalle eyther to deth hyr yelþ
Or putte hyr on a queste of knightis ;
There-to bothe there handis vp-helþ
And trewly there trouthis plighte. 927

(117)

News of all
this comes to
Lancelot,
who has
been again
wounded.

Whan they in Certeyne had sette a day
And that quarelle vndir-take,
The word sprange sone throw eche contrey
What sorow that quene genure ganne make ; 931
So at the laste, shortely to say,
Word come to launcelot du lake,
There as he seke I-woundyd lay ;
Men tolþ hym holly aþ the wrake, 935

(118)

how that quene Genure the bright
had slayne with grete treasoun
A swithe noble scottishe knight
At the mete with stronge poyssoun ; 939
There-for a day was taken Right
That she should fynd a knight full bowne
For hyr sake for to fighte
Or ellis be brente with-oute Raunsowne. 943

(119)

He swears
that he will
avenge her
on the ap-
pointed day.

Whan þat launcelot du lake
had herþ holly aþ this fare,
Grete sorow gon he to hym take,
For the quene was in suche care, 947
And swore to venge hyr of that wrake
That day yif þat he lyvand ware ;
Than payneþ he hym his sorows to slake
And wexe as breme as Any bare. 951

(120)

[leaf 100]

[N]ow leve we launcelot there he was,
with the ermyte in the forest grene,
And telle we forthe of the case
That touchith Arthur the kynge so kene. 955

Sir Gawayne on the morne to conselle he tase

And mornyd sore for the quene ;

In-to a toure than he hym has

And ordeyned the beste there them by-twene ; 959

As the king
and Gawayne
are standing
in a tower
one day con-
sulting about
the queen's
affairs,

(121)

And as they in there talkynge stode,

To ordeyne how it beste myght be,

A feyre Ryuer vndyr the toure yode,

And sone there-in gonne they see

A lytelle bote of shappe full good

To theyme-ward w^{it}h the streme gon te ;

There myght none feyrer sayle on flode

Ne better forgid as of tree.

963 they observe
a little boat
in the river
which flows
beneath.

967

(122)

Whan kynge Arthur saw þat sighte,

he wondrid of the Riche apparrayle

That was aboute the bote I-dighte,

So Richely was it coueryd sanzfayle,

In maner of a voute w^{it}h clothis I-dighte,

Alle shynand as gold as yt ganne sayle.

Than sayd Sir Gawayne the good knight :

"This bote is of A ryche entayle."

They wonder
at the rich
furnishings
of the boat,

971

975

(123)

"For sothe, sir," sayd the kynge tho,

"Suche one sawgh I neuyr Are ;

Thedir I Rede now þat we go ;

Som adventures shalle we se thare ;

And yif it be w^{it}h-in dight so

As with-oute or gayer mare,

I darre sauely say therto,

By-gynne wille auntres or ought yare."

979

983

(124)

Oute of the toure adowne they wente,

The kynge arthur & sir Gawayne ;

To the bote they yede w^{it}h-oute stynte,

They two allone, for sothe to sayne ;

and go down
to investigate
the matter.

987 [leaf 100, bk.]

And whan they come there as it lente,
 They by-held it faste, is not to layne;
 They enter the boat,
 A clothe that ouer the bote was bente
 Sir Gawayne lyfte vp, and went in bayne. 991

(125)

and on a bed
 in it they find
 a beautiful
 girl lying
 dead.
 Whan they were in, *with*-outen lese,
 FuH Richely aRayed they it founde,
 And in the myddis a feyre bedde was
 For Any kynge of Cristene lond. 995
 Than as swithe, or they wold sese,
 The koverlet lyfte they vp *with* hand;
 A dede woman they sighe ther' was,
 The fayrest mayde þat myght be found. 999

(126)

To Sir Gawayne than sayd the kinge:
 "For sothe dethe was to vn-hende,
 Whan he wold thus fayre a thinge
 Thus yonge oute of the world do wende; 1003
 For hyr biaute *with*-oute lesynge
 I wold fayne wete of hyr kynde,
 What she was, this swete derelynge,
 And in hyr lyff where she gonne lende." 1007

(127)

Gawayne
 recognizes
 her as the
 Maid of
 Ascalot.
 Sir Gawayne his eyen than on hyr caste
 And by-held hyr fast *with* herte fre
 So that he knew welle at the laste,
 That the mayde of Ascalote was she, 1011
 Whiche he som tyme had wowyd faste
 his owne leman for to be,
 But she aunsweryd hym Ay in haste,
 "To none bot launcelot wold she te." 1015

(128)

He tells
 Arthur who
 it is.
 To the kinge þan sayd *sir* Gawayne tho:
 "Thinke ye not on this endris day,
 Whan my lady the quene & we two
 stode to-gedir in youre play, 1019

Off a mayde I told^d you tho

That launcelot louyd paramoure Ay ?”

“Gawayne, for sothe,” the kyng^e sayd tho,

“Whan thou it saydiste wele thinke I may.” 1023 [leaf 101]

(129)

“For sothe, syr,” þan sayd *sir* Gawayne,

“This is the may^d that I of spake ;

most in this world, is not to layne,

She lovi^d launcelot du lake.” 1027

“For sothe,” the kyng^e þan gon to sayne,

“me Rewith the deth of hyr for his sake ;

The inchesoun wold I wete full fayne ;

For sorow I trow deth gon hyr take.” 1031

(130)

Than *sir* Gawayne, the good knight,

Sought aboute hyr *with*-oute stynte,

And found a purs fulle Riche a-Righte,

With gold and perlis þat was I-bente ; 1035

AH empty semyd it noght to sight.

That purs full sone in hon^d he hente,

A letter there-of than oute he twight :

Than wete they wold fayne what it mente ; 1039

(131)

What there was wreten wete they wold ;

And *sir* Gawayn it toke the kyng^e

And bad hym open yt¹ that he shold ;

So dy^d he sone *with*-oute lesyng^e ; 1043

Than found he whan it was vn-fold^d,

Bothe the ende and the by-gynnyng^e,

Thus was it wreten, as men me told^d,

Off that fayre maydens deyng^e : 1047

(132)

“**T**o kyng arthur and aH his knightis

That longe to the Round^d table,

That corteyse bene and most of myghtis,

Doughty and noble, trew and stable, 1051

This letter is addressed to Arthur and the knights of the Round Table.

¹ MS. openyd.

And most worshipfuH in all fyghtis,
 To the nedefuH helpinge & profitable,
 The mayde of Ascalot to Rightis
 Sendith gretinge, *with-uten* fable : 1055

(133)

To you aH my playnte I make
 [leaf 101, bk.] Off the wronge that me is wroghte,
 But noght in maner to vndir-take
 That Any of you shold mend it ought ; 1059
 Bot onely I say for this sake,
 That, thoughe this world were throw sought,
 Men shold nowhere fynd your make,
 AH noblisse to fynde that myght be sought ; 1063

(134)

There-fore to you to vndirstand
 She says that she has died for love That, for I trewly many a day
 haue lovid lelyest in lond,
 Dethe hathe me fette of this world away ; 1067
 To wete for whome yif ye wil found,
 That I so longe for in langoure lay,
 To say the sothe will I noght wound,
 For gaynes it not for to say nay ; 1071

(135)

To say you the sothe tale,
 For whome I haue suffred this woo,
 I say deth hathe me take *with* bale
 of a knight who is strong in battle but churlish of manners, For the noblest knight þat may go ; 1075
 Is none so doughty dyntis to dale,
 So Ryalle ne so fayre ther-to ;
 But so churlysshe of maners in feld ne hale
 Ne know I none of frende ne fo ; 1079

(136)

Off foo ne frend, the sothe to say,
 So vn-hend of thewis is ther' none ;
 his gentillnesse was aH a-way,
 AH churlysshe maners he had in wone ; 1083

For for no thinge þat I coude pray,
 Knelynge ne wepyng *with* Rewful^h mone,
 To be my leman he sayd eyur nay
 And sayd shortely he wold^h haue none. 1087

since he had
 refused to
 accept her
 love,

(137)

For-thy, lordis, for his sake
 I toke to herte grete sorow and Care,
 So at the laste deth *gonne* me take,
 So þat I might lyve na mare; 1091
¹For trew louyng had I suche wrake
 And was of blysse I-browghte AH bare;
 AH was for launcelote du lake,
 To wete wisely for whom it ware." 1095

[leaf 102]

that is to say,
 Lancelot.

(138)

When that arthure, the noble kyng,
 had redde the letter and kene the name,
 he said to gawayne, *with*-oute lesyng,
 that launcelott was gretly to blame, 1099
 And had hym wonne a Reproovyng
 For eyur and a wikkyd fame,
 Sythe she deide for gre[te] louyng,
 that he her refusyd it may hym shame. 1103

The king
 blames
 Lancelot.

(139)

to the kyng than sayd syr gawayne :
 " I gabbyd on hym thys 3endyr day,
 that he longede whan I gon^h sayne
With lady other *with*² som^h othyr maye; 1107
 bot sothe than^h sayde ye, is not to layne,
 that he nolde nought hys loue laye
 In so low A place in vayne,
 But on^h a pryse lady and a gaye." 1111

Gawayne
 acknowledges
 that he was
 wrong in
 having said
 that Lancelot
 had taken the
 Maid of
 Ascalot as his
 lady-love.

(140)

" Syr gawayne," sayd the kyng thoo,
 " What is now thy best rede?
 how mow we *with* thys maydyn do?"
 Syr gawayne sayd : " so god me spede, 1115

¹ With this line the second hand of the MS. begins.

² MS. whith.

They deter-
mine to bury
her like a
duke's
daughter.

Iff that ye wille assent ther-to,
Worshippffully we shulle hyr lede
In-to the palys and bery her so,
As fallys A dukys daughter in dede." 1119

(141)

The king :
tells the
court how
she had died
on account of
Lancelot.

ther-to the kyng Assentid sone ;
Syr gawayne dyd men) sone be ȝare,
And worshippfully, as felt to done,
In-to the palyse they her bare. 1123
the kyng than) tolde with-out lone
to AH hys barons, lesse and mare,
how launcelot nolde noughte graunte hyr bone,
ther-fore she dyed for sorow and care. 1127

(142)

Gawayne
confesses to
the queen too
that what he
had reported
of Lancelot
was false.

to the quene than) went syr gawayne
And gon to telh hyr AH the case :
" For sothe, madame," he gon to sayne,
" I yelde me gyllty of A trespass. 1131
I gabbyd on) launcelot, is not to layne,
of that I tolde you in thys place ;
I sayde that hys bydyng bayne
the dukys daughter of Ascolote was ; 1135

(143)

[leaf 102, bk.]

off uscalot that m[a]yden) ffre,
I sayd you she was hys leman ;
that I so gabbyd it rewetȝ me,
for AH the sothe now telle I can) ; 1139
he nold hyr nought, we mowe welle se ;
For-thy dede is that white as swanne ;
thys lettere there-of warannte wolbe ;
She playnethe on) launcelot to eche man)." 1143

(144)

The queen
blames
Gawayne
severely for
what he had
said.

the quene was as wrothe as wynde
And to syr gawayne sayd she than) :
" For sothe, Syr, thou were to vnkynde
to gabbe so vppon) any man), 1147

but thou haddyst wist the sothe in mynde,
Whether that it were sothe ore nan);
thy curtesy was AH be-hynde,
Whan thou thoo sawes freste began); 1151

(145)

thy worshippe thou vn-dediste gretlyche,
Suche wronge to wite that good knyght;
I trowe he ne a-gulte the neuyr nought myche
Why that thou oughtiste *with* no Ryghte 1155
to gabbe on hym so wylanlyche,
thus be-hynde hym, oute of hys syghte.
And, syr, thou ne woste not Ryght wiseliche
What harme hathe falle there-of and myght; 1159

(146)

I wende thou haddiste be stable and trewe
And fuH of AH curtesseye,
bot now me thynke thy maners¹ newe,
thay bene AH toumnyd to vilanye, 1163
now thou on knyghtis makeste thy glewe
to lye vppon hem for envye;
Who that the worshippeth, it may hem rewe;
there-fore devoyede my companye." 1167

(147)

Syr gawayne than slyghly wente awaye;
he syghe the quene agreuyd sore;
No more to hyr than wolde he saye
Bot trowyd hyr wrathe haue euyr more. 1171
the quene than, as she nyghe wode were,
wryngyd hyr handys and said: "weH-awaye!
Allas! in world that I was bore!
that I am a wreche welle say I may! 1175

Gawayne
takes leave
of her, and
she laments
that she had
believed a
falsehood
concerning
Lancelot.

(148)

herte, Allas! why were thou wode
to trowe that launcelot du lake
were so falsse and fykelle of mode
A-nother lemman than the to take? 1179

¹ MS. meners.

nay, sertes, for Alle thys worldis goode
 he nolde to me haue wrought suche wrake." 1181

[One leaf missing in the Manuscript here between folios 102 and 103. It probably contained an account of the burial of the Maid of Ascalot, as the Vulgate-Lancelot does, and possibly also details of Lancelot's life in the forest.]

* * * * *

(165)

[leaf 103] To fynde A man for hyr to feyghte 1318
 The queen is to be burnt, if she does not find a champion by the appointed day.
 Or elles yeld her to be brente;
 Iff she were on a queste of knyghtis, 1320
 Wele sche wiste she shold be shente;
 Though she agylte hade no wight,
 No lenger lyffe myght hyr be lente. 1323

(166)

The king and queen beg Bors, Lyonelle and Ector to aid them,
 The kynge than sighed and gaffe hym ylle
 And to syr gawayne than he yede,
 To bors de gawnes and lyonelle,
 To estor that doughty was [in] dede, 1327
 And askyd yif eny were¹ in wille
 To helpe hym in that mykyll nede.
 The quene one knes be-fore hem felle,
 That neyghe oute of hyr wite she yede; 1331

(167)

but they refuse, believing she is guilty.
 The knyghtes answeyrd with lytell pride,
 her he[r]tes was full of sorow and woughe,
 Sayd: "all we saughe and satte besyde,
 The knyght when she with poyson sloughe; 1335
 And sythe, in herte is nought to hyde,
 Syr gawayne ouer the bord hym droughe;
 A-gayne the Ryght we wille not Ryde,
 We saw the sothe verely I-noughe." 1339

(168)

The queen makes an especial appeal to Bors,
 The quene wepte and sighed sore,
 To bors de gawnes went she thoo,

¹ MS. werere.

On knes by-fore hym feth she thore,
 That nyghe her hert braste in two : 1343
 "lord bors," she seyde, "thyn ore!
 To-day I shaft to dethe goo,
 Bot yiffe thy worthy wille wore
 To brynge my lyffe oute of thys woo." 1347

(169)

Bors de gawnes stille stode
 And wrothe a-way hys y3en wente.
 "Madame," he sayde, "by crosse on rode
 Thou art wele worthy to be brente ; 1351
 The nobleste bodye of flesahe and blode
 That euyr was yete in erthe lente
 For thy wille and thy wykkyd mode
 Out of oure companye is wente." 1355

but he says
 that she
 ought to be
 burnt for
 driving
 Lancelot
 away.

(170)

Than she wepte and gaffe hyr ille
 And to syr gawayne than she yede,
 On knes downe be-fore hym fette,
 That neigh oute of hyr witte she yede ; 1359
 "Me[r]cy," she cryed loude and shrylle,
 "Lord, as I no gilt haue of thys dede,
 Yif it were thy worthy wille
 To-day to helpe me in thys nede ? " 1363

She goes then
 to Gawayne,

[leaf 108, bk.]

(171)

Gawayne answeyrd *with litelle pride*,
 Hys hert was full of sorow and woughe :
 "Dame, saw I not And sat be-syde,
 The knyght whan thou *with* poyson sloughe ? 1367
 And sythe, in hert is not to hyde,
 My-selfe ouer the bord hym droughe ;
 A-gayne the Ryght wille I not Ryde,
 I sawghe the sothe verrye I-noughe." 1371

but he says
 that he was a
 witness of
 her guilt.

(172)

Than she wente to lyonelle,
 That euer had bene her owne knyght,
 On knes downe be-fore hym felle
 That neyghe she lost mayne and myght. 1375

She next
 beseeches
 Lyonelle, but
 he answers
 in the same
 terms as
 Bors.

"Mercy," she cryed loude and shrylle,
 "lord, As I ne haue gilte no wyght,
 Yif it were thy worthy wyll
 for my lyffe to take thys fyght!" 1379

(173)

"Madame, how may thou to us take
 And wote thy-selfe so wytterly
 That thou hast launcelot du lake
 Brought oute of ower companye? 1383
 We may syghe and monynges make
 Whan we se knightis kene in crye;
 Be hym thatt me to man gan shape
 We ar glade that thou it a-bye!" 1387

(174)

She then
 goes to Estor,

Than ful sore she gan hyr drede,
 Welle she wiste hyr lyffe was lorne;
 Loude gon she wepe and grede
 And estor kneles she be-forne. 1391
 "For hym that on the Rode gon sprede
 And for vs bare the crone of thorne,
 Estor, helpe now in thys nede,
 Or, certes, to-day my lyfe is lorne!" 1395

(175)

but he too
 refuses.

"Madame, how may thou to us take,
 Or how sholde I for the feyght?
 Take the now launcelot du lake
 That eyr has bene thyn owne knyght; 1399
 My dere brother, for thy sake
 [leaf 104] I ne shaft hym neuyr se with sight;
 Cursyde be he that the batalle take
 To saue thy lyffe a-gayne the Ryghte!" 1403

(176)

Ther wolde no man the batayle take,
 The quene wente to her chambyr soo,
 So dulefully mone gon she make
 That nyghe hyr hert brast in twoo; 1407

For Sorow gon she sheuer and quake
 And sayd : " Allas and wele-A-woo !
 Why nade I now launcelot du lake !
 AH the curte nolde me noght sloo.

The queen in
 her distress
 wishes for
 Lancelot.

1411

(177)

yuelle haue I be-sette the dede
 That I haue worshipped so many a knyght,
 [And I haue no man in my nede¹] 1413 b
 For my lyffe darre take a fight. 1414
 lord kynge of AH thede !
 That aH the worlde shaH Rede and Ryght,
 launcelot thou saue and hede,
 Sithe I ne shalle neuyr hym se with syght!" 1418

(178)

The quene wepte and gaue hyr ylle ;
 Whan she sawe the fyre was yare,
 than mornyd she fuH stille ;
 To bors de gawnys went sho thare, 1422
 By-sought hym, yif it were hys wille,
 To helpe hyr in hyr mekyHe care ;
 In swounynge she be-fore hym felle,
 That wordys myght sho speke no mare. 1426

She again
 beseeches
 Bors for help

(179)

Whan bors saw the quene so bryght,
 Of her he hade grete pyte ;
 In hys armys he helde her vpe-Ryght,
 Bade hyr of good comfort be : 1430
 " Madame, but there come a better knyght
 That wolde the bataile take for the,
 I shalle my-selue for the fighte,
 Whyle any lyffe may laste in me." 1434

and this time
 he promises
 to be her
 champion
 unless a
 better knight
 presents
 himself.

(180)

Than was the quene wonder blythe
 That bors de gawnys wolde for her feyght,

The queen
 rejoices.

¹ A line is required here to make up the usual stanza-form. Its absence from the MS. is due, no doubt, to an oversight of the scribe. Dr. Furnivall, referring to l. 1570, has supplied the line which I have adopted in the text. There can be little doubt that the missing line had this form.

That nere for Ioye she swounyd swythe,
 But as that he her helde vp-Ryght; 1438
 To hyr chambre he led hyr blythe,
 To ladyes and to maydens bryght,
 [leaf 104, bk.] And bad she shulde it to no man kythe,
 Tylle he were armyd and redy dyght. 1442

(181)

Bors tells the knights of his promise to the queen,
 Bors, that was bolde and kene,
 Clepyd AH hys other knyghtis,
 And tokyn conselle hem be-twene,
 The beste that thay couthe and myght, 1446
 how that he hathe hyght the quene,
 That ilke day for hyr to feyght
 A-yenste Syr mador full of tene,
 To saue hyr lyfe yife that he myght. 1450

(182)

and they are angry with him.
 The knyghtis answerd with wo and wrake,
 And sayd they wyste wetterlye
 That "she hathe launcelot du lake
 Browght oute of ouere companye. 1454
 Nys non that nolde thys bataile take,
 Er she hade any vylanye,
 But we nylle not so glad hyr make
 By-fore we ne suffre hyr to be sorye." 1458

(183)

Bors, Lyonelle and Estor now go to the forest to say their orisons.
 Bors and lionelle, the knyght,
 Estor, that doughty was of dede,
 To the forest than went thay Ryght,
 There orysons at the chapelle to bede, 1462
 To oure lord god AH full of myght
 That day sholde lene hem wele to spede,
 A grace to venquesshe the feyght;
 Of syr mador thay hade grete drede. 1466

(184)

There they meet Lance-
 lot.
 As they came by the forest syde,
 There orysons for to make,
 The nobleste knyght than saue thay Ryde
 That euer was in erthe shape; 1470

hys loreme lemyd AH *with* pride,
 stede and armure AH was blake ;
 hys name is noght to hele and hyde,
 he hyght Syr launcelot du lake. 1474

(185)

What wondyr was thoughe they were blythe,
 Whan) they ther mayster se *with* syght !
 On knes Felle thay as swythe
 And thankyd AH to god AH-myght ; 1478
 Ioye it was to here and lythe
 The metynge of the noble knyght ;
 And after he askid Also swythe : [leaf 105]
 "how now farys my lady bryght ?" 1482

(186)

Bors than) tolde hym) AH the Ryght,
 It was no lenger for to hyde,
 How there dyed a scottysche knyght
 Atte the mete the quene besyde : 1486
 "To-day, syr, is here dethe AH dyght,
 It may no lenger be to hyde,
 And I for hyr haue take the feyght ; 1489
 [. *no gap in the MS.*] 1489 b

(187)

Syr mador, stronge though that¹ he be,
 I hope he shaH welle proue hys myght."
 "To the courte now wende ye thre
 And recoumforte my lady bryghte, 1493
 [. 1493 b
 *no gap in the MS.*] 1493 c
 Bot loke ye speke no word of me,
 I wolte come as A strange knyght." 1495

(188)

launcelot that was mochelle of myght
 A-bydys in the forest grene ;
 To the courte wente these othyr knyghtis
 For to recomforte the quene, 1499
 The knights
 return to
 court.

¹ MS. thought tha.

To make hyr glade *with* AH theyre myght ;
 Grete Ioye they made hem by-twene ;
 For-why she ne sholde drede no wyght,
 Off goode comforte they bade her bene. 1503

(189)

On the ap-
 pointed day
 the king and
 queen are at
 the table,

Bordes were sette and clothys sprede,
 The kyng hym-selfe is gone to sytte,
 The quene is to the table lade,
With chekys that were wanne and wete ; 1507
 Off sorow were they neuyr vn-sad,
 Myght they neyther drynke ne ete ;
 The quene of dethe was sore A-drade,
 That grymly terys gone she lete. 1511

(190)

when Sir
 Mador
 appears and
 demands the
 execution of
 the covenant.

And as thay were at the thryd mese,
 The kyng and AH the courte be-dene,
 Syr mador AH redy was,
With helme And shelde and haubarke shene ; 1515
 A-monge hem AH be-fore the dese
 He bloweth oute vppon the quene,
 To haue hys Ryght *with*-outen lese,
 As were the covenantes hem by-twene. 1519

(191)

[leaf 105, bk.]

The kyng lokyde one AH hys knyghtis,
 Was he neuere yet so woo,
 Sawhe neuyr on hym dyght
 A-yenste Sir mador for to goo ; 1523
 Syr mador swore by goddys myght,
 As he was man of herte thro,
 Bot yif he hastely haue hys Ryght,
 A-monge hem AH he sholde hyr slo. 1527

(192)

The king
 begs him to
 wait.

Than spake the kyng of mekelle myght,
 That Ay was cortayse and hende :
 " Syr, lete vs ete, and sythen us dyght,
 Thys day nys nought yit gone to the ende ; 1531

yet myght there come suche A knyght,
 yif goddys wyll were hym to sende,
 To fynde the thy fyllle of fyghte,
 Or the sonne to grounde wende." 1535

(193)

Bors than loughe on lyonelle,
 Wyste no man of here hertys worde ;
 hys chambyr A-none he wendys tylle
 With-oute any othyr worde, 1539
 Armyd hym at AH hys wille
 With helme and haubarke, spere and sworde ;
 A-gayne than comys he full styllle
 And sette hym downe to the borde. 1543

Bors gets
 ready to
 defend the
 queen,

(194)

The terys ranne on the kyngis kne
 For Ioye that he sawe bors adyght ;
 Up he rose with hert[e] free
 And bors in armys clyppis Ryght, 1547
 And sayd : " bors, god for-yelde it the,
 In thys nede that thow wolde fyghte :
 Welle Acquytteste thou it me
 That I haue worshipped any knyght." ¹ 1551

and the king
 rejoices at
 this ;

(195)

Than as Syr mador loudeste spake,
 The quene of treson to by-calle,
 Comys syr launcelot du lake
 Rydand Ryght in the halle ; 1555
 hys stede and armure AH was blake,
 hys visere ouer hys yzen falle ;
 Many A man by-gonne to quake :
 A-drade of hym nyghe were they Alle. 1559

but when
 Sir Mador
 again appeals,

Lancelot
 rides into the
 hall as the
 champion,
 disguised.

(196)

Then spake the kyng, mykelle of myght,
 That hend was in Iche A sythe :
 " Syr, is it youre wille to lyghte,
 Ete and drynke and make you blythe ?" 1563

The king
 does not at
 first under-
 stand,

¹ MS. knyght.

launcelot spake as A strange knyght :

1585

"Nay, Syr." he sayd as swythe,

"I herde telle here of A fight ;

I come to save A ladyes lyue ;

1567

(197)

yeueff hathe the quene by-sette hyr dedys

That she hathe worsshippid many A knyght

And she hathe no man in her nedys

That for hyr lyfe dare take a fight.

1571

but Launcelot
soon an-
nounces his
purpose.

Thou that hyr of treson/ gredys,

Hastely that thou be dyghte.

Oute of thy witte Ioughe that thou wedis,¹

To-day thou shalt proue All thy myght."

1575

(198)

Sir Mador
gets ready
for the
combat.

Than was Syr mador Also blythe

As foule of day after the nyght ;

To hys stede he wente that² Sythe,

As man that was of moche myght ;

1579

To the felde than Ryde thay swythe,

hem folowes bothe kyng and knyght,

The bataile for to se and lythe.

Saugh nevir no man A stronger fyght ;

1583

(199)

Both knights
are at first
unhorsed,

Vn-horsid were bothe knyghtis kene,

They metten *with* so myche mayne,

And sythe thay faught *with* swordys kene,

Bothe on fote, for sothe to sayne ;

1587

In Alle the batailles that launcelot had bene,

With hard acountres hym A-gayne,

In poynte had he nevir bene

So nyghe hande for to haue be slayne.

1591

(200)

and the fight
is a stubborn
one,

There was so wondyr stronge A fyghte,

O fote nolde nouthur fle ne founde

frome Ioughe none tylle late nyght,

Bot gyffen many a wo^uful wounde.

1595

¹ MS. wendis.

² MS. than. But that is required. Cp. l. 1613.

launcelot than) gaffe A dynte *with* myght,
 Syr mador fallys at laste to grounde ;
 "Mercy," cryes that noble knyght,
 Fore he was seke and sore vnsound.

but Mador
 is at last
 overcome.

1599

(201)

Thoughe launcelot were breame as bore,
 Full stournely he ganne vp stande ;
 O dynte wolde he smyte no more,
 hys swerd he threwe oute of hys hande.

1603

Syr mador by god than sware ;

[leaf 106, bk.]

"I haue foughte in many A lande,
 With knyghtis bothe lesse and mare,
 And neuyr yit er my mache I founde ;

He praises
 the victor's
 prowess,

1607

(202)

Bot, Syr, A prayer I wolde make,
 For thyng that ye loue moste on lyfe
 And for oure swete lady sake,
 your name that ye wolde me kythe."
 launcelot gan hys viser vp take
 And hendely hym shewed that sythe.
 Whan he saughe launcelot du lake,
 Was neuyr man on molde so blythe :

and begs to
 know his
 name.

1611

1615

(203)

"lord," thane said he, "welle is me,
 Myne Auauntement that I may make
 That I haue stande on dynte of the
 And foughten *with* launcelot du lake ;
 My brother's dethe for-geffen be
 To the quene for thy sake."
 launcelot hym kyste *with* herte fre
 And in hys armys gan hym vp take.

He congratu-
 lates himself
 that he could
 stand up at
 all against so
 famous a
 champion.

1619

1623

(204)

Kynge Arthur than loude spake
 A-monge hys knyghtis to the quene :
 "Ja, yonder is launcelot du lake,
 Yiff I hym euyr *with* syght haue sene."

The king now
 recognizes
 Lancelot,

1627

Thay Ryden and ronne than for hys sake,
 The kynge and Alle hys knyghtis kene ;
 In hys armys he gon hym take,
 The kynge hym kyste and courte by-dene. 1631

(205)

and the queen
 almost
 swoons for
 joy.

Than was the quene glade I-noghe
 Whan she saw launcelot du lake,
 that nyghe for Ioy she felle in swoughe
 Bot as the lordys hyr gan vp take. 1635

The knyghts
 are now on
 friendly
 terms with
 Sir Mador.

The knyghtis AH wepte and loughe,
 For Ioye as thay to-gedyr spake ;
 Withe Syr mador, *with*-outen woughe,
 FuH sone acordement gon they make. 1639

(206)

They all ride
 back to the
 castle,

It was no lenger for to A-byde
 Bot to the castelle thay Rode as swythe,
 Withe trompys and *with* mykelle pryde,
 That Ioy it was to here and lythe ; 1643

[leaf 107]

Thoughe syr mador myght not go ne Ryde
 To the curte is he brought that sythe,
 And knyghtis vppon Iche A syde
 To make hym bothe glad and blythe. 1647

(207)

and under
 torture a
 squire con-
 fesses that he
 had alain the
 Scotch
 knight.

The squeers than were takyn Alle
 And thay ar put in harde payne,
 Whiche that seruyd in the halle,
 Whan the knyght was *with* poyson slayne. 1651
 There he grauntyd A-monge hem Alle,
 It myght no lenger be to layne,
 How in an Appelle he dede the galle
 And hadde it thought to syr gawayne. 1655

(208)

Sir Mador is
 greatly dis-
 tressed at the
 wrong he had
 done the
 queen.

Whan syr mador herde AH the Ryght,
 That no gylte hadde the lady shene,
 For sorowe he loste mayne and myghte
 And on knees felle be-fore the quene ; 1659

launcelot then hym helde vppe Ryghte
 For loue that was them be-twene ;
 Hym kyste bothe kynge and knyght
 And sythen AH the curte by-dene. 1663

(209)

The squyer than was done to shende,
 As it was bothe lawe and Ryght,
 Drawen and hongyd and for-brende .
 Be-fore syr mador, the noble knyghte. 1667
 In the castelle thay gan forthe lende,
 The Ioyus gard than was it hyghte ;
 launcelot that was so hende
 Thay honouryd hym with Alle ther myght. 1671

The squire
is executed.

(210)

A tyme be-felle, sothe to sayne,
 the knyghtis stode in chambyr and spake,
 Bothe gaheriet and syr gawayne
 And mordreite that mykelle couthe of wrake : 1675
 " Allas ! " than sayde syr Agrawayne,
 " How fals men schalle we vs make !
 And how longe shalle we hele and layne
 The treson of launcelote du lake ! 1679

One day
Agrawayne is
speaking to
his brothers
about Lance-
lot's intrigue
with the
queen.

(211)

Wele we wote, with-uten wene,
 The kynge arthur oure eme sholde be
 And launcelote lyes by the quene ;
 A-geyne the kynge¹ tra[y]tor is he ; 1683
 And that wote AH the curte by-dene,
 And Iche day it here and see ;
 To the kynge we shulde it mene,
 Yif ye wille do by the counselle of me." 1687

He thinks
that they
should tell
the king.
[leaf 107, bk.]

(212)

" Wele wote we," sayd syr gawayne,
 " That we ar of the kyngis kynne,
 And launcelot is so mykyH of mayne
 That suche wordys were better blynne. 1691

Gawayne
opposes this,

¹ MS. knyke.

and says that
to disclose
the affair will
bring on
war.

Welle wote thou, brothyr agrawayne,
There-of shulde we bot harmys wynne;
yit were it better to hele and layne
Than werre and wrake thus to be-gynne. 1695

(213)

Welle wote thou, brother agrawayne,
launcelot is hardy knyght and thro;
kyng and courte hade ofte bene slayne,
Nad he bene better than we mo; 1699
And sythen myght I neuyr sayne
The loue that has bene by-twene vs twoo;
launcelot shalle I neuyr be-trayne
By-hynde hys bake to be hys foo. 1703

(214)

launcelot is kynges sonne full good,
And therto hardy knyght and bolde,
And sythen and hym ned by-stode,
Many A lande wolde with hym holde; 1707
Shedde ther sholde be mykelle blode
For thys tale, yiffe it were tolde;
Syr Agrawayne he were full wode
That suche a thyng be-gynne wolde." 1711

(215)

Just then
the king
comes in,
and,
becoming
suspicious,

Than thus gatys as the knyghtis stode,
Gawayne and AH that other pres,
In come the kyng with mylde mode;
Gawayne than¹ sayd: "felaus, pees"; 1715
The kyng for wrathe was neghe wode
For to wette what it was;
Agrawayne swore by crosse And Rode:
"I shalle it you telle with-oute lees." 1719

demands
what they
are talking
about,

(216)

All the
brothers
leave the
room except
Agrawayne,

Gawayne to hys chambyr wente,
Off thys tale nolde he noht here;
Gaheriet and gaheryes of hys A-sente
With the here brother went they there; 1723

¹ MS. that.

Agrawayne tells him of Lancelot's intrigue with the Queen. 51

Welle they wyste that AH was shente
And syr gawayne by god than swere :
" here now [is] made A comsemente
That bethe not fynysshyd many A yere." 1727

(217)

Syr Agrawayne tolde Alle be-dene
To the kyng *with* symple chere,
How launcelot liggys by the quene,
" And so has done fuH many A yere, 1731
And that wote AH the courte by-dene
And Iche day it se and here,
And we haue false and treytours bene
That we ne wolde neuyr to you dyskone, 1735

who tells the
king that
Lancelot has
been intimate
[leaf 108]
with the
queen for
many years.

(218)

" **Allas!**" than sayd the kyng *thore*,
" Certes, that were grete pyte,
So **As** man nad neuyr yit more
Off biaute ne of bounte 1739
Ne man in worlde was neuyr yit ore
Off so mykylle noblyte.
Allas! fuH grete duelle it were
In hym shulde Any *treason* be; 1743

The king is
grieved at
this,

(219)

But sythe it is so, *with*-outen fayle,
Syr Agrawayne, so god the Rede,
What were now thy beste consayle
For to take hym *with* the dede? 1747
he is man) of suche Apparayle,
Off hym I haue fuH mychelle drede;
AH the courte nolde hym Assayle
Yiff he were Armyd vppon hys stede." 1751

and wishes to
know how he
may catch
Lancelot in
the act.

(220)

" Syr, ye and AH the courte by-dene
Wendythe to-morowe on huntynge Ryght,
And sythen send word to the quene
That ye wille dwelle *with*-oute AH nyght, 1755

Agrawayne
proposes that
the king
should go
hunting the
next day and
pretend that
he is to be
away all
night.

This will give
Agrawayne,
with twelve
knights, an
opportunity
to catch
Lancelot.

And I and other xii knyghtes kene
FuH preuely we shall vs dyght ;
We shaHe hym haue with-uten wene,
To-morow or Any day by lyght."

1759

(221)

The next day
the king acts
on this
proposal.

On the morow with AH the courte by-dene
The kynge gonne on huntynge Ryde,
And sythen he sent word to the quene
That he wolde AH nyght oute A-byde.
Aggrawayne with xii knyghtys kene
Atte home be-lefte that ilke tyde ;
Off Alle the day they were not sene,
So preuely thay gonne hem hyde.

1763

1767

(222)

The queen
sends for
Lancelot,
when the
king has
gone.

Tho was the quene wondyr blythe
That the kynge wolde at the foreste dwelle ;
To launcelot she sente as swythe
And bad that he shulde come her tille.

1771

Bors suspects
something,
[leaf 108, bk.]
and tries to
persuade
Lancelot not
to go,

Syr bors de gawnes be-ganne to lythe,
Thoughe hys herte lyked ille ;
"Syr," he said, "I wolde you kythe
A word, yif that it were your wille :

1775

(223)

Syr, to-nyght I rede ye dwelle ;
I drede ther be som treson dight
Withe Agrawayne, that is so felle,
That waites you bothe day and nyght ;
Off Alle that ye haue gonne hyr-tylle
Ne greuyd me neuyr yit no wight
Ne neuyr yit gaffe myn herte to ille
So mykelle as it dothe to-nyght."

1779

1783

(224)

but he insists
on going.

"Bors," he sayd, "holde style ;
Suche wordys ar noughte to kythe ;
I wille wende my lady tille,
Som new tythandes for to lythe ;

1787

I ne shaft noght bote wet[e] hyr wylle,
loke ye make youe glad and blythe;
Certenly I nelle nought dwelle
Bot come A-gayne to youe AH swythe." 1791

(225)

For-why he wende haue comynne sone,
For to dwelle had he not thought,
Non Armoure he dyde hym vppon
Bot A Robe AH sengle wrought; 1795
In hys hand A swerd he fone,
Off tresson dred he hym Ryght noght;
There was no man vndyr the mone
he wende with harme durste hym haffe sought. 1799

He did not
intend stay-
ing long,
however,
so he took no
armour with
him.

(226)

Whan he come to the lady shene,
he kissid and clypped that swete wyght;
For sothe, they neuyr wolde wene
That any treson was ther dyght; 1803
So mykylle loue was hem by-twene
That they noght de-parte Myght;
To bede he gothe with the quene
And there he thoughte to dwelle Alle nyght. 1807

He comes to
the queen's
chamber,

and goes to
bed with her.

(227)

he was not buskyd in hys bedde,
launcelot in the quenys boure,
Come Agrawayne and syr mordreit
With xii knyghtys stiffe in stowre; 1811
Launcelot of tresson they be-gredde,
Callyd hym fals and kyngys treytoure,
And he so so strongly was by-stedde
There-inne he hadde non Armoure. 1815

They had not
been in bed
long, when
Agrawayne
and his com-
panions begin
to raise a
clamour.

(228)

"Welaway!" than sayd the quene,
"launcelot, what shaft worthe of vs twoo!
The loue that hathe bene vs be-twene
To suche endynge that it sholde goo! 1819

[leaf 109]
The queen is
terribly
frightened,

Withe Agrawayne that is so kene,
 That nyght And day hathe bene oure foo,
 Now I wote, with-ouen wene,
 That Alle oure wele is tornyd to woo." 1823

(229)

but Lancelot
 tries to
 comfort her,
 and asks for
 armour.

"Lady," he sayd, "thow moste blynne ;
 Wyde I wote these wordis bethe Ryffe ;
 Bot is here any Armoure inne,
 That I may haue to saue my lyffe ?" 1827

There is none,
 however, at
 hand.

"Certis, nay," she sayd thenne,
 "Thys Antoure is so wondyr stryffe
 That I ne may to none Armoure wynne,
 Helme ne hauberke, swerd ne knyffe." 1831

(230)

Agrawayne
 and Mordred
 challenge
 Lancelot to
 come forth,

Euyr Agrawayne and syr mordred
 Callyd hym Recreante fals knyght,
 Bad hym Ryse oute of hys bedde,
 For he moste nedis with them fyght ; 1835

and he goes
 to the door
 with sword
 drawn.

Thoughe he none Armoure gete myght ;
 Wrothely oute hys swerd he gredde,
 The chamber dore he sette vp Ryght. 1839

(231)

The first
 knight that
 attempts to
 slay Lancelot
 is himself
 slain.

An Armyd knyght be-fore in wente,
 And wende launcelot wele to sloo,
 Bot launcelot gaffe hym soche A dynte
 That to the grounde gonne he go ; 1843
 The other AH agayne than stente ;
 Aftyr hym dorste folowe no moo ;
 To the chambyr dore he sprete
 And claspit it with barres twoo. 1847

(232)

Lancelot now
 puts on the
 dead man's
 armour,

The knyght that launcelot has slayne,
 Hys Armoure founde he fayre and bryght ;
 Hastely he hathe hem ofdrayne
 And therin hym-selfe dight. 1851

"Now, know thou wele, syr Agrawayne,
Thow presons me no more to-Nyght."
Oute than sprange he *with* mykeH mayn,
Hym-selfe a-yenste hem alle to fyght.

and attacks
his assailants.

1855

(233)

Launcelot than smote *with* herte goode,
Wete ye welle, *with*-outen lese;
Syr Agrawayne to dethe yode,
And sythen AH the other presse;
Was non so stronge that hym *with*-stode
Be he had made A lytelle Rese;
Bot mordreit fled as he were wode,
To saue hys lyff ful fayne he was.

He slays
Agrawayne,
[leaf 109, bk.]

1859

and Mordred
flees.

1863

(234)

Launcelot to hys chambre yode,
to bors and to hys other knyghtis;
Bors Armyd be-fore hym stode,
To bedde yit was he noȝt dight;
The knyghtis for fere was nye wode,
So were they drechyd aH that nyght,
Bot blythe wexid they in her mode
Whan they her mastyr sawghe *with* syght.

Lancelot gets
back to his
knights,

1867

1871

(235)

"Syr," sayd bors, the hardy knyght,
"Aftyr you haue we thoght ful longe,
To bedde durste I ne noȝt dight,
For drede ye hade som Aunter stronge;
Owre knyghtis haue be drechyd to-nyght,
That som nakyd oute of bed spronge,
For-thy we were ful sore a-fryght
Leste som treson were vs Amonge."

who had
been uneasy
about him all
that night.

1875

1879

(236)

"Ya, bors, drede the no wight,
Bot bethe of herte good And bolde,
And swythe A-waken vp AH my knyghtis
And loke whiche wille *with* vs holde;

Lancelot tells
them to arm
themselves.

1883

Like they be Armyd and redy dight,
 For it is sothe that thou me tolde,
 We haue be-gonne thys ilke nyght
 That shaft brynge many A man full colde." 1887

(237)

Bors than spake with dreery mode :
 " Syr," he sayd, " sithe it is so,
 We shalle be of hertis good
 Aftyr the wele to take the wo." 1891
 The knyghtis spreant as they were wode
 And to there harneise gon the go ;
 They do so, At the morow Armyd be-fore hym stode
 An hundrethe knyghtis and squyers mo. 1895

(238)

and ride
 forth to a
 forest,

Whan they were armyd and redy dight,
 A softe pas forth gonne they Ride,
 As men that were of mykelle myght,
 To A forest there be-syde ; 1899
 Launcelot Arrayes AH hys knyghtis
 And there they loggen hem to byde
 Tylle they herd of the lady bryght,
 What Auntere of hyr shulde be-tyde. 1903

where they
 wait to hear
 what has
 befallen the
 queen.
 [leaf 110]

(239)

Mordred
 brings the
 news to
 Gawayne,

Mordreit than toke A way full gayne,
 And to the forest wente he Right,
 Hys Auntures tolde, for sothe to sayne,
 That were by-fallyn that ylke nyght. 1907
 " Mordreit, haue ye that treitour slayne,
 Or how haue ye with hym dight?"
 " Nay, syr, bot dede is aggrawayne,
 And so Ar AH oure other knyghtis." 1911

(240)

Whan it herde syr gawayne,
 That was so hardy knyght and bolde,
 " Allas ! is my brother slayne?"
 Sore hys herte be-gan to colde ; 1915

" I warnyd wele syr Aggrawayne,
Or eyr yit thys tale was tolde,
Launcelot was so myche of mayne,
A-yenste hym was stronge to holde." 1919

who says that
he warned
Agrawayne of
what would
happen.

(241)

It was no lenger for to hyde,
Kynge And AH hys knyghtis kene,
Toke there counselle in that tyde,
What was beste do *with* the quene. 1923
It was no lenger for to hyde,
That day fo[r]-brent shuld she bene. 1925
[. 1925 b
. *no gap in the MS.*] 1925 c

The king and
his knyghts
determine
that the
queen must
be burnt.

(242)

The fyre than made they in the felde,
There-to they brought that lady fre,
AH that eyr myght wepene welde
A-boute her Armyd for to bee. 1929
Gawayne, that stiffe was vndir shelde,
Gaheryet ne gaheryes ne wold nozt see ;
In there chamber they hem helde
Off hyr they had grete pyte. 1933

A fire is
accordingly
made,

but Gawayne
and his two
brothers
refuse to be
present at the
queen's
execution.

(243)

The kynge Arthure that ylke tyde
Gawayne And gaherys for sent ;
here Answeres were nozt for to hyde,
They ne wolde nozt be of hys assente ; 1937
Gawayne wolde neuyr be nere by-syde
There Any woman shuld be brente ;
Gaheriet And gaheries *with* lytelle pryde,
AH vn-Armyd thedyr they wente. 1941

(244)

A squeer gonne tho tythandes lythe,
That launcelot to courte had sente ;
To the foreste he wente as swithe
There launcelot and hys folke was lente, 1945

A squire
brings Lance-
lot news of
what is
impending,

[leaf 110, bk.] Bad hem come and haste blythe,
 The quene is ledde to be brente ;
 and he and his men hasten to save her. And they to hors and Armes swythe
 And Iche one be-fore other sprente. 1949

(245)

The quene by the fyre stode
 And in hyr smoke AH redy was ;
 lordyngis was there many and good
 And grete power, *with*-outen lese. 1953
 They get there in time, Launcelot sprente, as he were wode,
 FuH sone partyd he the prees,
 Was none so styffe a-*ȝeyn*ste hym stode,
 Be he had made a lytelle Rese. 1957

(246)

and over-whelm all resistance, There was no stele stode hem aȝeyne ;
 Though faught they but A lytelle stound,
 Lordyngys that were myche of mayne
 Many goode were brought to grounde ; 1961
 slaying among others Gaheriet and Gaheries, Gaheriet and gaheries bothe were slayne,
 Wythe many A doulfuH dethes wounde ;
 They take the queen back to the forest with them. The quene thay toke *with*-oute layne,
 And to the foreste gonne they founde. 1965

(247)

The king laments the loss of his knights, **T**he tythyngis is to the kynge brought,
 how launcelote has tane away the quene.
 "Suche wo as there is wroughte !
 Slayne ar Alle oure knyghtis kene." 1969
 Downe he felle and swounyd ofte,
 Grete duelle it was to here and sene ;
 So nere hys herte the sorowe sought
 AH-moste hys lyffe wolde no man wene ; 1973

(248)

"Ihesu cryste ! what may I sayne ?
 In erthe was neuyr man so wo ;
 Suche knyghtys as there ar slayne
 In AH thys worlde there is no mo. 1977

Lette no man telle Syr gawayne,
 Gaheriet hys brother is dede hym fro,
 But weilaway ! the reufulle Rayne, *hmsdore.*
 That euyr launcelote was my fo ! ”

and says that
 Gawayne
 must not
 know of
 Gaheriet's
 death.

1981

(249)

Gawayne gonne in hys chambyr hym holde,
 Off Añ the day he nolde not oute goo ;
 A squyer than the tythandys tolde
 What wondyr theighe hys herte were wo !
 “ Allas ! ” he sayde, “ my brother bolde,
 Where gahereit be dede me fro ? ”
 So sore hys hert be-gan to colde
 Añ-moste he wolde hym-selff sloo.

A squire
 nevertheless
 tells Ga-
 wayne,

1985

[leaf 111]

1989

(250)

The squyer spake *with* drery mode,
 To re-comfort syr Gawayne :
 “ Gaheriet eyles noght bot goode ;
 he wolle sone come A-gayne.”
 Gawayne sprent as he were wode
 To the chambre there they lay slayne ;
 The chambre flore Añ ranne on blode,
 And clothys of golde were ouer hem drayne.

who goes to
 where his
 brethren lie
 dead.

1993

1997

(251)

A clothe he heuys than vpon hyght ;
 What wondyr thoughe hys hert were sore
 So dully to se them dight
 That ere so doughty knyghtis were !
 Whan he hys brother sawghe *with* syght,
 A word myght he speke no more ;
 There he loste mayne and myght
 And ouyr hym felle in swounynge thore.

He swoons at
 the sight,

2001

2005

(252)

Off swounynge whan he myght A-wake,
 The hardy knyght, syr gawayne,
 Be god he sware and loude spake,
 As man that myche was of mayne :

but, when he
 recovers,
 he says that
 henceforth
 there will be
 no peace
 between him
 and Lancelot.

2009

“Be-twixte me And launcelote du lake
 Nys man in erthe, for sothe to sayne,
 ShaH trewes sette and pees make,
 Er outhur of vs haue other slayne.” 2013

(253)

A squyer that launcelot to court hadde sente
 Off the tythandys gonne he lythe ;
 To the foreste is he wente
 And tolde launcelot Also swythe, 2017
 how lordy[n]ges that were Riche of rente
 Fele goode had loste hyr lyffe,
 Gaheryet and gaheries sought here ende ;
 Bot than was launcelot no-thyng blythe ; 2021

Lancelot also
 learns of the
 death of
 Gaheriet and
 Gaheries.

(254)

“Lord,” he said, “what may thys bene ?
 Ihesu cryste! what may I sayne ?
 The loue that hathe be-twexte vs bene,
 That euyr gaheryet me was A-gayne ! 2025
 Now I wote for AH by-dene,
 A sorye man Is syr gawayne ;
 A-cordement thar me nevyr wene,
 Tille eyther of vs haue other slayne.” 2029

He grieves
 over Gaheriet,
 and recog-
 nizes that
 reconciliation
 with Ga-
 wayne is now
 impossible.

[leaf 111, bk.]

(255)

launcelot gonne with hysse folke forthe wende,
 With sory hert and drery mode ;
 To quenys and countesses fele he sende
 And grete ladyes of gentiH blode, 2033
 That he had ofte here landis deffende
 And foughten whan hem nede by-stode.
 Ichone her power hym lende,
 And made hys party stiffe and goode ; 2037

Lancelot
 begins to
 collect his
 forces for
 war.

(256)

quenys and countesses that Ryche were
 Sende hym erlys with grete meyne ;
 Other ladies that myght no more
 Sente hym barons or knyghtis free ; 2041

Many ladies
 of noble rank
 whom he had
 assisted send
 him men.

So mykelle folke to hym gon fare,
Hydous it was hys oste to see ;
To the Ioyus gard wente he thare
And helde hym in that stronge Cyte.

2045 He goes to
the city of
Joyus Gard

(257)

Launcelotis herte was full sore
For the lady fayre and bryght ;
A damosselle he dyd be yare,
In Ryche Apparayle was she dyght,
Hastely in message for to fare
To the kynge of mykelle myght,
To prove it fals (what myght he mare ?)
Bot proferys hym there-fore to fyght.

2049 and sends a
damsel to the
king to deny
the charges
made against
him.

2053

(258)

The mayden is Redy for to Ryde,
In A full Ryche Aparaylmente,
Off Samytte grene, with mykyll pryde,
That wroght was in the oryente ;
A dwerffe shulde wende by hyr syde,
Suche was launcelotis comaundement ;
(So were the manerys in that tyde,
Whan A. mayde on message wente.)

2057 The damsel,
richly
apparelled,
goes, accom-
panied by a
dwarf.

2061

(259)

To the castelle whan she come,
In the paleise gonne she lyght ;
To the kynge hyr erande she sayd sone,
By hym satte syr gawayne the knyght,
Sayd that lyes were sayde hym vppon ;
Trewe they were by day and nyght ;
To proue it as a knyght shulde done
Launcelot proferis hym to fyghte.

2065 She performs
her errand
to the king.

[leaf 112]

2069

(260)

The kynge Arthure spekys thore
Wordys that were kene and thro :
" He ne myght proue it neuer more
Bot of my men that he wold slo ;

but the king
will not be
reconciled.

2073

Be Ihesu cryste," the kynge sware,
 And Syr gawayne than Also,
 "his dedis shaH be bought full sore,
 Bot yife no stele nyH in hym go." 2077

(261)

The damsel
 brings back
 the king's
 answer to
 Lancelot.

The mayden hathe hyr answare,
 To the Ioyus garde gonne she Ryde ;
 Such as the kynges wordis were
 She told launcelot in that tyde ; 2081
 Launcelot Syghed wounder sore,
 Teres frome hys y3en ganne glyde ;
 Bors de gawnes by gode than sware :
 "In mydde the felde we shaH hem byde." 2085

(262)

Arthur now
 collects his
 forces too,

Arthure wolde no lenger a-byde
 Bot hastis hym with AH hys myght ;
 Messengeres dyd he go and Ryde,
 That thay ne shulde lette for day ne nyght, 2089
 Thorow-oute yngland by Iche a syde
 To erle, baroun and to knyght,
 Bad hem come that ilke tyde
 Withe hors stronge And Armure bryght. 2093

(263)

Thoughe the knyght that were dede hem fro,
 There-of was AH there mykelle kare,
 Thre hundrethe thay made mo,
 Oute of the castelle or they wold fare, 2097
 Off ynglonde A[nd] yreland Also,
 Off walys and scottis that beste were,
 Launcelot And hys folkys to slo,
 With hertis breime as Any bore. 2101

(264)

and his host
 sets out to
 besiege Joyus
 Gard.

Whan thys oste was AH bowne,
 It was no lenger for to byde,
 Rayses spere and gounfanoune,
 As men that were of mykelle pryde ; 2105

With helme and shelde and hauberke browne,
Gawayne hym-selfe be-fore ganne Ryde
To the Ioyus garde that Ryche towne,
And sette A sege on Iche A syde. 2109

(265)

A-boute the Ioyus garde they laye
Seuentene wokys And weH mare,
Tille it felle vppon A day
launcelot home bad hem fare : 2113
"Breke youre sege ! wendys a-waye !
You to slae grete pyte it ware."
He sayd " Allas and weilawaye !
That euyr beganne this sorewe sare ! " 2117

They besiege
it upwards of
[leaf 112, bk.]
seventeen
weeks, and
Lancelot
does not
attack them.

(266)

Evir the kynge and Sir gawayne
Calde hym fals Recreante knyght,
And sayde he had hys bretherne slayne
And treytour was by day and nyght, 2121
Bad hym come And proue hys mayne
In the felde with hem to fyghte.
Launcelot sighed, for sothe to sayne,
Grete duelle it was to se with sight. 2125

The king and
Gawayne
challenge him
to come forth.

(267)

So loude they launcelot gonne Ascrye
With vois and hydous hornys bere,
Bors de gawnes standis hym by
And launcelot makys yuelle chere. 2129
"Syr," he sayd, " whare-fore and why
Shulde we these proude wordys here ?
me thynke ye fare as cowardlye
As we ne durste no man nyghe nere. 2133

At last Bors
upbraids
Lancelot for
not accepting
the challenge.

(268)

Dight we vs in Ryche Araye,
Bothe with spere And with shelde,
As swithe as euyr that we maye,
And Ryde we oute in-to the felde ; 2137

Whyle my lyffe laste maye,
 Thys day I ne shaſt my wepen yelde ;
 There-fore my lyffe I darre wele laye
 We two shaſt make hem AH to helde.' 2141

(269)

Lancelot is
 loth to
 fight against
 the king,

"Allas !" quod launcelot, "wo is me,
 That euyr shuld I se with syghte
 A-ȝeyne my lord for to be,
 The noble kyng that made me knyght ! 2145
 Syr gawayne, I be-Seche the,
 As thou arte man of myche myght,
 In the felde let not my lorde be
 Ne that thy-selfe with me not fyghte." 2149

(270)

but cannot
 delay the
 conflict any
 longer.

It may no lenger for to byde
 But buskyd hem and made AH bowne ;
 Whan thay were Redy for to Ryde,
 They Reyseid spere and gonfanounne ; 2153
 [leaf 113] Whan these ostes gan samen glyde,
 Withe vois and hydous hornys sowne,
 Grete pyte was on eyther syde,
 So fele goode ther were layd downe. 2157

(271)

In the battle
 Gawayne
 wounde
 Lyonelle
 sorely,

Syr lyonelle with myche mayne
 Withe A spere by-fore gan founde ;
 Syr gawayne Rydys hym A-gayne,
 hors and man he bare to grounde, 2161
 That AH men wende he had ben slayne,
 Syr lyoneſſe hade suche A wounde ;
 Oute of the felde was he drayne,
 For he was seke and sore vn-sounde. 2165

(272)

but no one
 could stand
 up against
 Lancelot.

In AH the felde that ilke tyde
 Myght no man stonde launcelot a-ȝeyne,
 And sythen as faste As he myght Ryde
 To saue that no man sholde be slayne. 2169

The kynge was euyr nere be-Syde
And hewe on hym *with* AH hys mayne,
And he so corteise was that tyde
O dynte that he nolde smyte a-gayne.

2173

Lancelot will
not return
the king's
blows.

(273)

Bors de gawnes saughe at laste
And to the kynge than gan he Ryde,
And on hys helme he hytte so faste
That nere he loste AH hys pryde ;
The stede Rigge vndyr hym braste
That he to grounde felle that tyde,
And sythen wordys loude he caste,
Withe Syr launcelot to chyde :

2177

Bors un-
horses the
king,

2181

(274)

"Syr, shalthou AH day Suffer so
That the kynge shaH the assayle,
And sethe hys herte is so thro
Thy corteise may not A-vaile ?
Batailles shaH there neuere be mo,
And thou wilt do be my consalle ;
3euyth vs leue them AH to slo,
For thou haste venquesshid thys bataille."

2185

and rebukes
Lancelot for
having been
so con-
siderate.

2189

(275)

" Allas ! " quod launcelot, " wo is me,
That euyr shulde I se *with* syghte
By-fore me hym vnhorsyd bee,
The noble kynge that made me knyght ! "
he was than so corteise and fre
That downe of hys stede he lyghte ;
The kynge ther-on than horsys he
And bade hym fle, yiffe that he myght.

2193

Lancelot
helps the
king back on
his steed,

2197

(276)

Whan the kynge was horsyd there,
Launcelot lokys he vppon,
How corteise was in hym more
Then euyr was in Any man ;
MORTE ARTHUR.

2201

[leaf 113, bk.]
and the king
is touched by
his chivalry.

F

He thought on thyngis that had bene ore,
 The teres from hys yzen Ranne;
 He Sayde "Allas !" *with syghynge sore,*
 "That euyr yit thys werre be-gan !" 2205

(277)

The battle
 ceases for the
 day,

The parties arne *with-drawn* A-waye,
 Off knyghtis were they wexyn thynne;
 On morow on that other daye
 Scholde the bataille eftē begynne; 2209
 Thay dyght hem on A Ryche Araye
 And partyd ther osten bothe in twynne;
 he that by-ganne thys wrechyd playe,
 What wondyr thoughe he had grete synne ! 2213

(278)

only just at
 the end Bors
 and Gawayne
 have a tilt,

Bors was breme as Any bore,
 And oute he rode to syr gawayne;
 For lyonelle was woundyd sore,
 Wenge hys brother he wolde full fayne; 2217
 Syr gawayne gonne A-3eyne hym fare,
 As man that myche was of mayne;
 Eyther throughe other body bare,
 That welle nere were they bothe slayne; 2221

(279)

in which both
 are wounded.

Bothe to grounde they Felle in fere,
 There-fore were fele folke full woo.
 The kynges party Redy were
 A-way to take hem bothe two; 2225
 launcelot hym-selfe come nere,
 Bors rescous he them froo;
 Oute of the felde men hym bere,
 So were they woundyd bothe two. 2229

(280)

Off thys bataille were to telle,
 A man that it wele vndyrstode,
 How knyghtis vndyr sadels felle
 And sytten downe *with* sory mode; 2233

Stedys that were bolde and snelle
 A-monge hem waden in the blode,
 Bot by the tyme of euyne belle
 Launcelot party the better stode. 2237

(281)

Off thys batayle was no more,
 Bot thus depa[r]ten they that daye ;
 Folke here Frendys home ledde and bare
 That slayne in the feldys laye. 2241
 Launcelot' gonne to hys castelle fare,¹
 The bataille venquesshyd, for Sothe to saye ;
 There was dueH and wepyng sare,
 Amonge hem was no chyl dys playe. 2245

The two
parties with-
draw their
forces.

[leaf 114]

(282)

[I]nto] aH landys northe and southe
 Off thys werre the word spronge,
 And yit at Rome it was full couthe,
 In ynglande was suche sorowe stronge ; 2249
 There-of the pope had grete Routhe,
 A lettre he selid with hys hande ;
 Bot they accorded welle in trowthe,
 Enterdite he wolde the lande. 2253

News of the
war between
Arthur and
Lancelot
reaches the
pope,

who threatens
to lay the land
under an
interdict, if
they do not
stop it.

(283)

Then was A bischope at Rome,
 Off Rowchester, with-oute lese ;
 Tylle ynglande he, the message, Come,
 To karllylle ther the kynge was ; 2257
 The popis lettre oute he nome
 In the paleis by-fore the desse,
 And bade them do the popis dome
 And holde yngland in Reste and pes. 2261

The bishop of
Rochester
brings this
message to
England.

(284)

Redde was it by-fore AH by-dene,
 The lettre that the pope gonne make,
 How he moste haue a-zeine the quene
 And a-corde with the launcelot du lake ; 2265

¹ The scribe by mistake began this leaf with the first seven lines of leaf 113, but afterwards struck them out.

Make a pes hem by-twene
 For euyr more and trews make,
 Or ynglande entyrdyted shulde bene
 And torne to sorow for ther sake. 2269

(285)

The king is willing at the pope's command to take back his wife,
 though Gawayne opposes.

The kynge a-zeyne it wolde noȝte bene,
 To do the popys comaundemente,
 Blythely A-yeine to haue the quene ;
 Wolde he noght that ynglonde were shente ; 2273
 Bot gawayne was of herte so kene
 That to hym wolde he neuyr Assente
 To make A-corde hem by-twene,
 While Any lyffe were in hym lente. 2277

(286)

The bishop takes Arthur's message to [leaf 114, bk.] Lancelot, asking for the return of the queen.

Through the sente of AH by-dene
 Ganne the kynge A lettre make ;
 The bysschope in message yede by-twene
 To syr launcelot du lake, 2281
 And Askyd yiffe he wolde the quene
 Cortessly to hym by-take,
 Or yngland enterdyt shuld bene
 And torne to sorow for ther sake. 2285

(287)

✓

Lancelot is at first reluctant,

launcelot Answeryd *with* grete fauoure,
 As knyght that hardy was and kene :
 "Syr, I haue stande in many A stoure,
 Bothe for the kynge and for the quene ; 2289
 FuH colde had bene hys beste towre,
 Yiff that I nadde my-selfe bene ;
 he quytes it me *with* lytelle honoure,
 That I haue seruyd hym AH by-dene." 2293

(288)

The bysschope spake *with*-oute fayle,
 Thoughe he were nothyng A-froughte :
 "Syr, thynke that ye haue venquysshid many A bataille
 Through grace that god hathe for you wrought ; 2297

ye shaſſe do now by my counsayle :

Thynke on hym that you dere bought ;

Wemen Ar frele of hyr entayle ;

Syr, lettes not ynglande go to noght." 2301

(289)

" Syr bysshope, castelles for to holde

Wete you wele I haue no nede.

I myght be kynge, yif that I wolde,

Off AH benwike, that Ryche thede, 2305

Ryde in-to my landys bolde

Withe my knyghtes styffe on stede.

The quene, yif that I to them yolde,

Off her lyffe I haue grette drede." 2309

and fears
what may
happen to
the queen,
if he returns
her.

(290)

" Syr, be mary that is mayden floure,

And god that AH shaſſ rede and Ryght,

She ne shaſſ haue no dyshonoure,

There-to my trouthe I shaſſ you plyght, 2313

Bot boldely brought in-to hyr boure,

To ladyes and to maydens bryght,

And holden in wellle more honoure

Than euyr she was by day or nyght." 2317

The bishop
reassures
him,

(291)

" Now, yif I grande suche a thyng,

That I delyuere shaſſ the quene,

Syr bysshope, say my lorde, the kynge,

Syr gawayne and hem AH by-dene,

That thay shaſſ make me A sekerynge

A trews to holde vs by-twene." 2323

[. 2323 b

. no gap in the MS.] 2323 c

and Lancelot
consents,
provided the
king and
Gawayne will
conclude a
truce with
him.

(292)

Then was the bysshope woundyr blythe

That launcelot gaffe hym thys Answer ;

Tylle hys palfray he wente as swythe

And tylle karllyle gonne he fare ; 2327

[leaf 115]

The bishop
takes the
news back to
Carlisle.

Tythandys sone were done to lythe
 Whiche that launcelotis wordis ware ;
 The kynge and courte was AH full blythe,
 A trews they sette and sekeryd thare ; 2331

(293)

The king
 accepts
 Lancelot's
 conditions,

Through the Assent of AH by-dene
 A syker trews there they wrought ;
 Though gawayne were of hert[e] kene,
 There-a-yenste was he nozte, 2335

To hald A trews hem by-twene,
 While launcelot the quene home broght ;
 Bot cordemente¹ thar hym neuyr wene,
 Or eyther other herte haue sought. 2339

(294)

and a truce
 is made.

A syker trews gonne they make,
 And with ther seales they it bande ;
 There-to they thre bisshopys gon take,
 The wiseste that were in AH the lande, 2343

And sent to launcelot du lake ;
 At Ioyus gard² they hym fande ;
 The lettres there they hym by-take
 And there-to launcelot held hys hande. 2347

(295)

Lancelot is
 to bring the
 queen back
 next day.

The bisshopis than went on her way
 To karlyH there the kynge wase ;
 Launcelot shaH come that other day
 Withe the lady proude in pres. 2351

he dight hym I[n] a Ryche Araye,
 Wete ye wele, with-uten les ;
 An hundreth knyghtis, for sothe to saye
 The beste of AH hys oste [he] chese. 2355

(296)

There is a
 beautiful
 procession,
 when the
 queen is
 returned.

Launcelot and the quene were cledde
 In Robes of A Riche wede,
 Off Samyte white, with syluer shredde,
 yuory sadyH and white stede, 2359

¹ In MS. ouermente apparently, but cordemente is certainly intended. Cp. ll. 2028, 2422 and 2426.

² Just after gard in the MS. the is written by mistake.

Saumbues of the same threde,
That wrought was in the heythen thede ;
launcelot hyr brydelle ledde,
In the Romans as we Rede ; 2363

(297)

The other knyghtis euerychone
In Samyte grene of heythen lande
And in there kyrtelles Ryde Allone,
And Iche knyght a grene garlande, 2367 [leaf 115, bk.]
Sadillis sette with Ryche stone,
Ichone A braunche of olyffe in hande,
AH the felde A-boute hem schone ;
The knyghtis Rode full loude synghand. 2371

(298)

To the castelle when they come
In the paleise gonne they lyghte ;
Launcelot the quene of hir palfray nome,
They Seyde it was A semly syghte ; 2375
The kynge than salowes he full sone,
As man that was of myche myghte ;
Feyre wordys were there fone,
Bot wepyng stode there many A knyghte. 2379

Lancelot
delivers the
queen to
Arthur,

(299)

Launcelot spake, as I you mene,
To the kynge of mykelle myght :
"Syr, I haue the broght thy quene
And sauyd hyr lyffe with the Ryght, 2383
As lady that is feyre and shene
And trewe is bothe day and nyght ;
Iffe Any man sayes she is nocht cleue,
I profre me there-fore to feyght." 2387

and declares
that he will
fight any one
who says
that she is
not pure.

(300)

The kynge Arthur Answerys thore
Wordys that were kene and throo :
"Launcelot, I ne wende neuyr more
That thow wolde me haue wrought thys woo ; 2391

Arthur
reproaches
Lancelot.

So dere as we samen were,
 There-vniyr that abou was my foo ;
 Bot noght for-thy me Rewis sore
 That euer was werre by-twente vs two." 2395

(301)

Lancelot re-
 pines that he
 has been
 slandered.

L Aunselot than Answeryde he,
 Whan he had lystenyd longe :
 " Syr, thy wo thow witeste me
 And welle thou woste it is with wronge ; 2399
 I was neuyr fer frome the,
 When thou had Any sorow stronge ;
 Bot lyers lystenes thow to lye,
 Off whome All thys word oute spronge." 2403

(302)

Gawayne
 vows venge-
 ance against
 Lancelot for
 having slain
 his brothers,

Than by-spake hym Syr gawayne,
 That was hardy knyght and free :
 " launcelot, thou may it noght with-sayne
 That thow haste slayne my brethrene thre ; 2407
 For-thy shaft we proue oure mayne
 In feld whether shaft haue the gree ;
 Or eyther of vs shaft other slayne
 Blythe shaft I neuyr be." 2411

(303)

[leaf 116]
 but Lancelot
 asserts that
 he did not
 slay them.

Launcelot Answeryd with hert sore,
 Thoughe he were nothyng A-froughte :
 " Gawayne," he said, " thoughe I were there,
 My-self thy brethren slow I noght ; 2415
 Other knyghtis fele ther were
 That sythen thys werre dere han bought."
 launcelot syghed wonder sore,
 The terys of hys yen sowght. 2419

(304)

He begs
 Arthur and
 Gawayne to
 become re-
 conciled with
 him,

launcelot spake, as I you mene,
 To the kyng and syr gawayne :
 " Syr, shaft I neuyr of cordemente wene
 That we myght frendys be A-3eyne !" 2423

Gawayne spake with hert[e] kene, As man that myche was of mayne :	but Gawayne vehemently refuses.
"Nay, corderment thar the neuyr wene Tylle on of vs haue other slayne."	2427

(305)

"Sythe it neuyr may be-tyde That pees may be vs by-twene, May I in-to my landys Ryde Saffely with my knyghtis kene ?	Lancelot then wishes to be allowed to ride into his own lands unmolested.
Than wille I here no lenger byde, Bot take leue off yow All by-dene ; Where I wende in world[e] wyde, Engelond wolle I neuyr sene."	2431 2435

(306)

The kynge arthur Answered thore, The terys from hys y3en Ranne :	
"By Ihesu cryste !" he there swore, "That AH thys worlde wroght and wan,	2439
In-to thy landys whan thou wiltt fare, The shaH lette no lyuand man."	This the king promises.
He sayd "Allas !" withe syghynge sare, "That euyr yit thys werre by-ganne !	2443

(307)

Sythe that I shaH wende A-waye And in myn Awne landys wone, May I saffly wone ther aye, That ye wythe werre not come me on ?"	Lancelot next wishes to know whether they intend to attack him in his own country,
Syr gawayne than sayd : " naye, By hym that made sonne and mone, Dight the as welle as euyr thou may, For we shaH After come fuH sone."	2447 2451
	and Gawayne says they do.

(308)

launcelot hys leue hathe taken thare, It was no lenge[r] for to byde ; hys palfray found he Redy 3are, Made hym Redy for to Ryde ;	Lancelot takes his leave in sorrow.
	2455

Oute of the castelle gonne they fare,
 Gremly teres lette they glyde ;
 [leaf 116, bk.] There was dwelle and wepyng sare,
 At the partyng was lytelle pryde. 2459

(309)

He first rides To the Ioyus gard, the Ryche towne,
 to Joyus Rode launcelot, the noble knyghte ;
 Gard, Busked hem and made A bowne,
 As men that were of myche myght, 2463
 Withe spere in hand and gonfanowne
 (lette they nouthur day ne nyght)
 and then to a To An hauen hight kelyon ;
 port called kelyon (Caerleon).
 Ryche galleys there they fande dyght. 2467

(310)

He sets sail Now ar thay shyppyd on the flode,
 for Benwike, launcelot And hys knyghtis hende ;
 Wederes had they feyre and goode
 Wher hyr wille was for to wende, 2471
 To An hauen there it stode
 As men were leueste for to lende ;
 Off benwike blythe was hyr mode,
 Whan Ihesu cryst hem thedir sende. 2475

(311)

and is joy- Now ar thay Aryued on the stronde,
 fully received Off hem was fele folke full blythe ;
 there. Grete lordis of the lande,
 A-zeine hym they come as swythe, 2479
 And fellyn hym to fote and hande ;
 For her lord thay gonne hym kythe,
 At hys domys for to stande,
 And at hys lawes for to lythe. 2483

(312)

He makes Bors made he kynge of gawnes,
 Bors king As it was bothe law and Ryght ;
 of Gawnes
 and Lyonelle lyonelle made kynge of fraunce,
 king of Be olde tyme gawle hyghte ;
 France. 2487

Arthur, preparing for war abroad, makes Mordred regent. 75

AH hys folke he ganne Auance
And landys gaffe to Iche A knyghte,
And storyd hys castellys for AH chance,
For mykyH he hopyd more to fyght. 2491

(313)

Estor he crownys with hys hande,
So sayes the boke with-uten lese,
made hym kyng of hys fadyr lande
And prynce of All the Ryche prese ; 2495
Bad no thyng hym shulde with-stande,
Bot hald hym kyng as worthy was,
For ther [no] more hym-self wold fande
Tylle he wiste to leffe in pes. 2499

He also
makes Estor
king of his
father's land.

(314)

A rthure wolle he no lenger A-byde,
nyght and day hys herte was sore ;
messengerys did he go And Ryde
Thoughe-oute yngland for to fare 2503
To erlys And barons on Iche A syde,
Bad hem buske and make AH zare,
On launcelot landys for to Ryde,
To brenne and sle and make AH bare. 2507

[leaf 117]
Arthur pre-
pares to wage
war against
Lancelot,

(315)

At hys knyghtis AH by-dene
The kyng gan hys conselle take,
And bad hem ordeyne hem by-twene
Who beste steward were for to make, 2511
The Reme for to saue and zeme,
And beste were for bretaynes sake ;
FuH mykelle they dred hem AH by-dene
That Alyens the land wold take. 2515

and takes
counsel with
his knyghts
as to who
shall govern
the realm in
his absence.

(316)

The knyghtis answeyrd, with-oute lese,
And said, for sothe, that so them thought
That syr mordred the sekereste was,
Thoughe men the Reme throw-oute sought, 2519

They say that
Mordred is
the best man,

To saue the Reme in trews and pees.
 Was A boke by-fore hym brought ;
 and he is accordingly made "steward."
 Syr mordreit they to steward chese ;
 That many A bolde sythen A-bought. 2523

(317)

It was no lenger for to byde,
 But buskes hem And made AH bowne ;
 Whan they were Redy for to Ryde,
 They Reised spere and gonfanowne ; 2527
 Forthe they went with mykelle pryde
 Tylle An hauyne hyght kerlyonne,
 And graythes be the lande syde
 Galeis grete of fele fasowne. 2531

Arthur as-
 sembles his
 galleys at
 Kerlyonne
 (Caerleon),

(318)

and passing over into Lancelot's country ravages it.
 now are they shippid on the see
 And wendyn ouyr the water wyde ;
 Off benwyke whan they myght se,
 Withe grete Route they gonne vp Ryde ; 2535
 with-stode hem neyther stone ne tre,
 Bot brente and slow on Iche A syde ;
 launcelot is in hys beste Cyte,
 There he batelle wolde A-byde. 2539

(319)

Lancelot gathers his [leaf 117, bk.] forces to-gether, and holds a council.
 launcelot clepis hys knyghtis kene,
 His erlys And hys barons bolde,
 Bad hem ordeyne hem by-twene,
 To wete her wylle, what they wolde, 2543
 To Ryde A-3eyne hem AH by dene
 Or ther worthe walles holde ;
 For weH they wiste, with-uten wene,
 For no fantyse Arthur nold folde. 2547

(320)

Bors urges that they should attack the invaders.
 Bors de gawnes, the noble knyght,
 stornnely spekys in that stounde :
 "Doughty men that ye be dyghte,
 Foundis your worship for to fownd, 2551

Withe spere and shelde and armes bryght
 A-ȝeyne your fo-men for to fownd ;
 Kynges and duke, erle and knyght,
 We shaH hem bete And brynge to grounde." 2555

(321)

Lyonelle spekys in that tyde,		Lyonelle thinks it
That was of warre wyse And bolde :		better to re-
"Lordyngis, yet I rede we hyde		main within
And oure worthy walles holde ;	2559	their walls
Le[t] them pryke with AH ther pryde		until the
Tylle they haue Caught bothe hungre and colde ;		invaders are
Than shaH we oute vppon them Ryde		tired out,
And shredde them downe as shepe in folde."	2563	and then attack them.

(322)

Syr banndemagew, that bolde kynges,		Bannde-
To launcelot spekys in that tyde :		magew says,
"Syr, cortessye And your sufferynge		however, that
Has wakend vs wo fuH wyde ;	2567	in the mean-
Awise you welle vppon thys thynges :		while the
Yiff that they ouer oure landys Ryde,		land will
AH to noght they myght vs brynge,		have been
Whye we in holys here vs hyde."	2571	destroyed.

(323)

Galyhud, that Ay was goode,		Galyhud is
To launcelot he spekys thare :		also in favour
"Syr, here ar knyghtis of kynges blode		of an imme-
That longe wylle not droupe And dare ;	2575	diat attack,
Gyffe me leue, for crosse on Rode		
Withe my men to them to fare ;		
Thoughe they be wers than outlawes wode,		
I shaH them sle and make fuH bare."	2579	

(324)

Off northe gales were bretherne seuen,		and so are
Ferly mekelle of strenghe and pryde ;		the seven
Not fuH fele that men coude neuyne		brothers of
Better dorste in bataile hyde ;	2583	North Gales.

78 *Lancelot sends a damsel to negotiate a truce.*

[leaf 118] *Al* they sayd *with* one steuen :
 "Lordyngis, how longe wolle ye chyde ?
 Launcelot, for goddys loue in heuen
 With galehud forthe lette vs Ryde." 2587

(325)

Lancelot is
in favour of
staying
within the
walls and
negotiating
for peace,
 Than spake the lorde that was so hende,
 Hym-Self, syr launcelot de lake :
 "Lordyngis, A whyle I rede we lende
 And oure worthy wallys wake ; 2591
 A message wille I to them sende,
 A trews be-twene vs for to take ;
 my lord is so corteise and hende
 That yit I hope A pees to make ; 2595

(326)

for enough
people have
been killed
already.
 Thoughe we myght the worshyppe wyne,
 Off A thyng myn hert is sore :
 Thys land is of folke full thynne,
 Bataylles has it made full bare ; 2599
 Wete ye welle it were grete synne
 Crysten folke to sle thus more ;
 Withe myldenesse we shaH be-gynne
 And god shaH wische vs wele to fare." 2603

(327)

Lancelot's
counsel pre-
vails,
 And at thys Assent *Al* they ware,
 And Sette A wacche for to wake,
 knyghtis breme as Any bare
 And derfe of drede as is the drake ; 2607
 A Damyselle thay dede be zare
 And hastely gon her lettres make ;
 A mayde sholde on the message fare
 A trews by-twene them for to take. 2611

and a damsel
is sent to ar-
range a truce,
if possible.

(328)

The mayde was full shene to shewe,
 Vppon her stede whan she was sette,
 Hyr paraylle *Al* of one hewe,
 Off A grene weluette, 2615

In hyr hand A braunche newe,
For-why that no man sholde her lette;
Ther-by men messangerys knewe
In ostes whan that men them mette. 2619

(329)

The kynge was lokyd in A felde
By A ryuer brode And dreghe;
A while she houyd And by-helde;
Pavylons were pyghte on hyghe; 2623
She saughe there many comly telde
Wythe pomelles bryghte as goldis beghe;
On one hynge the kyngis shelde, [leaf 118, bk.]
That payloun she drew hyr nyghe. 2627

(330)

The kynges baner oute was sette,
That paulyon she drewe her nere;
With A knyght ful sone she mette,
hyght Syr lucan de bottelere; 2631
She hailed hym and he her grette,
The mayde with ful mylde chere;
hyr erande was not for to lette,
he wiste she was A messengere. 2635

(331)

Sir lucan downe gan hyr take
And in hys Armes forthe gan lede;
hendely to her he spake,
As knyght that wise was vndyr wede: 2639
"Thou comeste from launcelot de lake,
The beste that euyr strode on stede;
Ihesu, for hys modyris sake,
Yiffe the grace wele to spede!" 2643

(332)

Feyre was pight vppon a playne
The paviloun in Ryche A-parayle;
The kynge hym-selfe and syr gawayne
Comely sytten in the halle; 2647

She ap-
proches the
king's
pavillon,

and meets
with Sir
Lucan de
Bottelere
there.

He praises
Lancelot,

and conducts
her to the
king.

Her letters
are read,

The mayde kneiyd the kynge A-gayne,
So lowe to grounde gan she falle :
here lettres were not for to layne,
They were I-rade A-monge hem AH.

2651

(333)

hendly and feyre the mayden spake,
Full fayne of speche she wold be sped :
"Syr, god yow saue from wo And wrake
And AH your knyghtis in Ryche wede ;
Yow gretis wele, syr launcelot du lake,
That with yow hathe bene euyr at nede ;
A xii monthe trowse he wolde take
To lyue vppon hys owne lede,

2655

2659

and she
pleads for
a twelve
months'
truce,

(334)

And sythen, yiffe ye make an heste,
he wille it holde with hys honde,
By-twene you for to make pees
Stabully euer for to stonde ;
He wolle Rape hym on A Resse
Myldely to the holy londe,
There to lyue, with-outen lese,
Whyhe he is man lyvande."

2663

2667

and peace
afterwards.

In that event
Lancelot, she
says, will
spend the
remainder of
his life in the
Holy Land.

(335)

The kynge than clepid hys counsayle,
Hys douȝty knyghtis AH by-dene ;
Fyrste he sayde, with-outen fayle :
"me thynke it were beste to sene ;
he were A fole, with-outen fayle,
So feyr forwardys for to fleme."
The kynge the messyngere thus did assayle :
"It were pite to sette warre vs by-twene."

2671

2675

[leaf 119];;

The king is
inclined to
accept these
terms,

(336)

"Sertis, nay," sayd syr gawayne,
"he hathe wrought me wo I-noughe,
So traytourly he hathe my bredren slayne,
AH for your loue, sir, that is treuthe,

2679

but Gawayne
is not,

To yngland wiH I not torne A-gayne
 Tylle he be hangid on a boughe ;
 Whyle me lastethe myght or mayne,
 There-to I shaH fynd peple I-noghe." 2683

(337)

The kynge hym-self, *with*-owten lese,
 And Iche A lord, is nought to layne,
 AH they spake to haue pese,
 But hym-self, syr gawayne, 2687
 To batayle hathe he made hys hest
 Or ellys neuer to torne A-gayne.
 They made hem Redy to that Rese,
 There-fore was fele folke vnfayne. 2691

All are in
 favour of
 peace except
 Sir Gawayne,
 who carries
 the day, how-
 ever.

(338)

The kynge is comyn in-to the halle
 And in hys Royah see hym sette ;
 He made A knyght the mayden calle,
 Syr lucane de botteler, *with*-outen lette : 2695
 " Say to launcelot and hys knyghtis AH,
 suche an heste I haue hym hette,
 That we shaH wend for no walle
 Tyll we *with* myghtis onys haue mette." 2699

The king
 sends Lan-
 celot word
 that they are
 determined
 on battle.

(339)

The mayde had hyr Answere,
 Withe drery hert she gan hyr dyght ;
 hyr feyr palfrey fande she yare,
 And Syr lucan ledde hyr thedyr Ryght ; 2703
 So throw A foreste gan she fare
 And hasted her *with* AH hyr myght,
 There launcelot and hys knyghtis were,
 In benwyk the browgh *with* bemys bryght. 2707

The damsel
 returns sor-
 rowfully with
 this answer
 to Lancelot,

(340)

Now is she went *with*-in the walle,
 The worthy damysselle fayre in wede ;
 Hendely she Cam in-to that halle,
 A knyght hyr toke downe of hyre stede ; 2711
 MORTE ARTHUR. G

[leaf 119, bk.

and he and
his men pre-
pare for the
fight.

A-monge the pryncis proude in palle
She toke hyr lettres for to Rede ;
There was no counsayle for to calle,
But Redely buskis them to that dede ;

2715

(341)

Arthur be-
siegges Lancelot in his
castle,

As folkys that preste were to feight,
Frome feld wold they neuyr fle ;
But by the morow that day was lyght
A-boute by-segyd was AH there Fee ;

2719

ychone theym¹ Rayed in AH Ryghtis ;
novther party thought to flee.

2721

[.

2721 b

. no gap in the MS.]

2721 c

(342)

and gets
ready to
make an
assault.

Erly as the day gan sprynge,
The trompettis vppon the wallis went ;
There myght they se a wondyr thyng,
Off teldys Riche and ma[n]y A tente.

2725

Syr arthur than, the comely kyng,
with hys folkis ther was lente,
To yeff Assaute, with-oute lesyng,
with Alblasters and bowes bente.

2729

(343)

Lancelot re-
strains his
men from
rushing
forth.

Launcelot AH for-wondred was
Off the folke by-fore the walle ;
But he had rather knowen that rease,
Oute had ronne hys knyghtis AH ;

2733

he sayd : " pryncis, bethe in pease,
For folyse fele that myght by-falle ;
yiff thay wiH not ther sege sease,
FuH sore I hope for-thynke hem shaH."

2737

(344)

Gawayne
offers a chal-
lenge to the
knights of
Lancelot's
party.

Than gawayne, that was good at euery nede,
Graythid hym in hys gode Armour,
And styffly sterte vppon A stede
That syker was in ylke A stoure ;

2741

¹ MS. theyne.

Forthe he spränge as sparke on glede,
 By-fore the yates a-gayne the toure ;
 he bad A knyght come kythe mayne,
 A cours of werre for hys honoure. 2745

(345)

Bors de gawnes buskys hym bowne	Bors accepts
Vpon A stede that shuld hym bere,	it, and is
With helme, sheld, And hauberke browne,	overthrown,
And in hys hand A FuH good spere ;	2749
Owte he Rode A grete Randowne ;	
Gawayn kyd he covde of werre ;	
hors and man bothe bare he downe,	
Suche A dynte he yaffe hym there.	2753

(346)

Syr lyonnelle was AH redy than	and when
And for hys broder was wonder woo ;	Lyonelle goes
Redely with hys stede oute Ranne	[leaf 120]
And wende gawayne for to sloo.	to his
Gawayn hym kepte as he wele can,	brother's
As he that ay was kene and thro ;	assistance,
Downe he bare bothe hors and man,	the same fate
And every day som seruyd he soo.	befalls him.
	2757
	2761

(347)

And so more than halfe a yere,	Fighting
As longe as they there layne,	went on
Euery day men myght se there	thus for more
Men woundyd and som slayne,	than half a
But how that euer in world it were,	year,
Suche grace had ser gawayne,	but Gawayne
Euer he passyd hole and clere ;	always
There myght no man stand hym Agayne.	escaped in-
	jury.
	2765
	2769

(348)

Than it by-Felle vponn A tyde,	One day he
Syr gawayne, that was hande and free,	issues a
He made hym redy for to Ryde	challenge to
By-fore the gatis of the Cyte ;	Lancelot
	especially.
	2773

Launcelot of treson he be-Cryed
 That he had slayne hys bretherne thre,
 That launcelot myzte no lenger A-byde,
 But he euer A cowardle scholde be. 2777

(349)

The lord that grete was of honoure,
 Hym-selffe, sir launcelot du lake,
 A-bove the gatis vpon the toure
 Comely to the kynge he spake : 2781
 " My lord, god saue youre honoure !
 Me ys wo now for yowre sake,
 A-gaynste thy kynne to stonde in stoure,
 But nedys I muste thys batayle take." 2785

Lancelot expresses his sorrow to the king that he has to accept,

(350)

Launcelot armyd hym full wele,
 For sothe had Full grete nede,
 Helme, hawberke and AH of stele
 And stifely sterte vpon A stede ; 2789
 Hys harneyse lacked he neuer A dele,
 To were wantyd hym no wede,
 No wepyn with AH to dele ;
 for-the he sprange as sparke on glede. 2793

and goes forth in full armour to meet Gawayne.

(351)

Than was it warnyd faste on hye
 How in world that it shu[l]d fare,
 That no man schold come hem nye
 Tylle the tone dede or yolden were. 2797
 Folke with-drew them than bye,
 Vpon the feld was brode and bare ;
 (leaf 180, bk.) The knyghtis mette, As men it syc,
 how they sette there dyntis sare. 2801

(352)

'Than had syr gawayne suche a grace,
 An holy man had boddyn that bone,
 Whan he were in Any place,
 There he shuld batayle done, 2805

It was a peculiarity of Gawayne's that his strength always increased up to the hour of noon,

Hys strength shulld wex in suche A space,
 From the vndyr-tyme tylle none,
 And launcelot for-bare ay for that case ;
 A-gayne xx strokys he yaff not one :

2809

Lancelot,
 knowing this,
 endeavours
 simply to
 defend him-
 self up to
 noon,

(353)

Launcelot saw ther was no socoure,
 nedysse muste he hys venture Abyde ;
 many A dynt he gan wele in-dure
 Tylle it drew nere the noon tyde ;
 Than he straught in that stoure
 And yaffe gawayne A wond wyde ;
 The blode AH coueryd hys coloure
 And he felle downe vpon hys syde.

2813

but, being
 pressed,

2817

he severely
 wounds
 Gawayne,
 who falls to
 the ground.

(354)

Throw the helme in-to the hede
 Was hardy gawayne woundyd so
 That vnneth was hym lyfe leuyd ;
 On fote myght he no ferther goo ;
 But wightly hys swerd A-bowte he wavyd,
 For euer he was bothe kene and thro.
 launcelot than hym lyAnd levyd ;
 For AH the world he nold hym slo.

2821

2825

Lancelot will
 not slay
 Gawayne,

(355)

launcelot than hym drew on dryhe ;
 hys swerd was in hys hand drawen ;
 And syr gawayne cryed lowde on hye :
 " Traytour And coward, come A-gayne,
 Whan I Am hole And goynge on hye ;
 Than wylle I prove with myght and mayne,
 And yit A thow woldyst nyghe me nye,
 Thow shalt wele wete I am not slayn."

2829

2833

although
 Gawayne
 continues to
 defy him.

(356)

"Gawayne, while thow myghtis styfflye stonde,
 many A stroke to-day of the I stode,
 And I for-bare the in euery londe
 For love and for the kyngis blode ;

2837

He tells
 Gawayne to
 change his
 mood,

Whan thou arte hole in herte and hond,
 I rede the torne and chaunge thy mode ;
 [leaf 121] Whyle I am launcelot and man levande,
 Gode sheld me frome werkys wode ! 2841

(357)

But have good day, my lord the kynge,
 And your doughty knyghtis Alle ;
 and advises Wendyth home A leue youre werryeng ; 2845
 the king to
 return home.
 ye wynne no worshyp at thys walle ;
 And I wold my knyghtis oute brynge,
 I wote fuH sore rewe it ye shalle ;
 My lord, there-fore, thynke on suche thynges,
 how fele folke there-fore myght falle." 2849

(358)

launcelot, that was moche of mayne
 Boldely to hys Cyte wente ;
 Hys good kny3tis [there]-of were fayne
 and Gawayne And hendely hym in armys hente. 2853
 is borne back
 to his tent.
 The tother party tho toke syr gawayne,
 They wessche hys woundys in hys tente ;
 Or euer he coueryd myght or mayne,
 vnnethe was hym the lyffe lente. 2857

(359)

A fortenyght, the sothe to saye,
 FuH passynge seke and vn-sonde
 There syr Gawayne on lechynges laye,
 Gawayne is 2861
 ill for a fort-
 night,
 Or he were hole AH of hys wounde.
 Than it by-felle vppon A day,
 he made hym Redy for to wound ;
 but at the but at the end of that time he again chal-
 lenges Lan- celot.
 By-fore the yat he toke the way
 And Askyd batayle in that stownd : 2865

(360)

"Come forthe, launcelot, and prove thy mayne,
 Thou traytour that hast treson wrought ;
 my thre brethern thou haste slayne
 And falsly theym to ground[e] brought ; 2869

Whyle me lastethe myght or mayne,
 Thys qareH leve wyH I noght,
 Ne pees shaH ther neuer be sayne
 Or thy sydes be throw sought." 2873

(361)

Than launcelot thocht it no thyng gode
 And for these wordis he was fuH wo ;
 A-bove the gatis than he yode
 And to the kynge he sayd so : 2877
 "Syr, me rewys in my mode
 That gawayne is in hert so thro.
 Who may me wyte, for corsse on Rode,
 Thouth I hym in bataylle sloo?" 2881

Lancelot
 again ex-
 presses his
 sorrow to the
 king that
 Gawayne
 should be so
 implacable,

(362)

Launcelot buskyd And made hym bowne,
 he wiH boldely the batayle A-byde,
 With helme, shelde And hauberke browne,
 None better in AH thys world[e] wyde, 2885
 With spere in hand and gonfanowne,
 hys noble swerd by hys syde ;
 Oute he Rode A grete randowne,
 Whan he was Redy for to Ryde. 2889

[leaf 121, bk.]
 but has to
 ride forth
 for a second
 combat.

(363)

Gawayne grypes a fuH good spere
 And in he glydes glad and gay ;
 Launcelot kydde he coude of were
 And eunyn to hym he takys the way ; 2893
 So stoutely they gan to-geder bere
 That marvayle it was, sothe to say ;
 With dyntis sore ganne they dere
 And depewondys daltyn thay. 2897

The fight
 takes place,

(364)

Whan it was nyghed nere-hand none,
 Gawayne strenghe gan to in-crese ;
 So bitterly he hewyd hym vppon
 That launcelot AH for-wery was ; 2901

and Ga-
 wayne's
 strength,
 as usual,
 increases up
 to noon.

Lancelot,
however,
strikes,
Gawayne a
blow

Than to hys swerd he grypes A-none,
And sethe that gawayne wyth not sese,
Suche A dynte he yaffe hym one
That many a Ryche Rewed that resse. 2905

(365)

on the old
wound, so
that Ga-
wayne lay
groaning on
the ground.

launcelot sterte forthe in that stownde,
And sethe that gawayne wiþ no sease,
The helme that was Ryche and Rownde
The noble swerd[e] rove that rease ; 2909
he hyt hym A-pon the olde wounde
That ouer the sadyth downe he wente
And grysely gronyd vpon the ground,
And there was good gawayne shent. 2913

(366)

He, neverthe-
less, con-
tinues to defy
Lancelot,

yit gawayne swounynge there as he lay
Gryped to hym bothe swerde And sheld ;
“lancelot,” he sayd, “sothely to saye,
And by hym that AH thys world shaH welde, 2917
Whyle me lastethe lyffe to-daye,
To the me shaH I neuer yeld ;
But do the werste that euyr thou may,
I schaH defend me in the felde.” 2921

(367)

[leaf 122]
who answers
him in a
chivalrous
manner.

Launcelot than fulH styH stooode,
As man that was moche of myght :
“Gawayne, me rewes in my mode,
Men hald the so noble A knyght. 2925
Wenystow I were so wode
Agaynste A feble man to fyght ?
I wyth not now, by crosse on Rode,
Nor neuer yit dyd by day nor nyght. 2929

(368)

Lancelot
again warns
the king to
go home and
stop the war.

But haue good day, my lord the kynge,
And AH youre dou3ty knyghtis by-dene,
Wendyth home and leue your werrynge,
For here ye shaH no worshyppe wyne. 2933

yif I wolde my knyghtis oute brynge,
 I hope fuH sone it shuld be sene,
 but, good lord, thynke vpon A thyng,
 The loue that hathe be vs by-twene."

2937

(369)

After was it monthes two,
 As frely folke it vndyr-stode,¹
 Or euer gawayne myght Ryde or go
 Or had fote vpon erthe to stonde,
 The thirde² tyme he was fuH thro
 To do batayle *with* herte and hande,
 But than was word comen hem to
 That they muste home to yngland.

2941

2945

Two months
 later Ga-
 wayne was
 eager for still
 a third com-
 bat with
 Lancelot,

(370)

Suche mesage was hem brought,
 There was no man that thought it goode ;
 The kynge hym-selfe fuH sone it thought
 (FuH moche mornyd he in hys mode
 That suche treson in ynglond shuld be wroght)
 That he moste nedys ouer the flode.
 They brake sege and homward sought,
 And After they had moche Angry mode.

2949

2953

but news
 from Eng-
 land prevents
 this.

(371)

That fals traytour, *sir* mordreid—
 The kynges soster sone he was,
 And eke hys owne sonne, As I rede—
 There-fore men hym fo[r] steward chase—
 So falsely hathe he yngland ledde,
 Wete yow wele, *with*-outen lese,
 Hys Eme-is wyffe wolde he wedde,
 That many A man rewyd that rease.

2957

2961

This news is
 concerning
 Mordred's
 treason,
 how he
 wished to
 wed the
 queen.

(372)

Festys made he, many and fele,
 And grete yiftys he yafe Also ;
 They sayd *with* hym was Ioye and wele
 And in Arthurs tyme but sorow and woo ;

2965

He had so
 ingratiated
 himself by
 gifts and
 [leaf 122, bk.]
 feasts that
 the people
 now pre-
 ferred him
 to Arthur.

¹ Perhaps the mark indicating n over the o has been left out.
 The analogy, however, of ll. 3062 ff. speaks against this.

² MS. iij.

And thus gan Ryght to wronge goo ;

AH the concelle, is noght to hele,

Thus it was, *with*-outen moo,

To hold mordred in londe *with* wele.

2969

(373)

He has false
letters writ-
ten to the
effect that
Arthur is
dead, and a
new king
must be
chosen.

False lettres he made be wrought,

And causyd messangers hem to brynge,

That Arthur was to grownde broght,

And chese they muste A-nother kyng.

2973

AH thay sayd as hem thought :

"Arthur louyd noght but warynge

And suche thyng as hym-selfe soght.

Ryght so he toke hys endyng.

2977

(374)

The people
gladly make
Mordred
king,

mordred let crye A parlement ;

The peple gan thedyr to come,

And holly throwe there assente

They made mordred kyng *with* crowne ;

2981

and, after
holding a
feast in
Canterbury,
he goes to
Winchester.

At canturbury, ferre in kente,

A Fourtenyght held the feste in towne,

And after that to Wynchester he wente ;

A Ryche brydale he lette make bowne ;

2985

(375)

He has it
proclaimed
that he is
going to
marry his
father's wife,

In somyr, whan it was fayr and bryght,

Hys faders wyfe than wold he wedde

And hyr hold *with* mayne and myght,

And so hyr bryng as byrd to bedde.

2989

and the queen
is in great
distress.

Sche prayd hym of leue A fourtenyght—

The lady was full hard be-stad—

So to london sche hyr dyght,

That she and hyr maydens myght be cledd.

2993

(376)

She shuts
herself up in
the tower of
London,

The quene, whyte as lyly floure,

With knyghtis fele of her kynne,

She went to london to the towre

And speryd the gates And dwellyd therin.

2997

Mordred changed than hys coloure,	
Thedyr he went and wold not blynnē ;	
There-to he made many A shoure,	
But the wallys myght he neuer wyne.	3001

and Mordred
cannot get
at her.

(377)

The Archebysshop of canterbery thedyr yode,	
And hys crosse by-fore hym broght.	
he sayd : "syr, for cryste on Rode,	
What haue ye now AH in your thoght?	3005
Thy faders wyffe, whether thou be wood,	
To wedd her now mayste thou noght.	
Come Arthur eyr ouer the flood,	
Thow mayste be bold, it wyH be boght."	3009

The Arch-
bishop of
Canterbury
rebukes him
for wishing
to marry his
[leaf 123]
father's wife,

(378)

"A nyse clerke," than mordred sayd,	
"Trowiste thow to warne me of my wille?	
be hym that for vs suffred payne,	
These wordys shalt thou lyke fuH ylle!	3013
with wilde hors thou shalt be drayne	
And hangyd hye vpon An hylle."	
The bischoppe to fle than was fayne	
And suffred hym hys folyes to fulfyllē ;	3017

but Mordred
replies by
threats
against the
archbishop,
who takes
flight.

(379)

Than he hym cursyd with boke And belle,	
At caunterbery, ferre in kente.	
Sone, whan mordred herd ther-of telle,	
To seche the bisschoppe hathe he sent ;	3021
The bysshop durste no lenger dwelle	
But gold And syluer he hathe hent ;	
There was no lenger for to spelle,	
But to A wyldernesse he is went ;	3025

When the
archbishop
reaches Can-
terbury, he
excommu-
nicates
Mordred,
but, being
pursued,
has to take
refuge in a
wilderness.

(380)

The worldys wele ther he wyH for-sake,	
Off Ioye kepeth he neuer more,	
But A chapelle he lette make	
By-twene two hye holtys hore ;	3029

There he has
a chapel
made, and
lives as a
hermit.

There-in weryd he the clothys blake,
 In wode as he an ermyte ware ;
 Often gan he wepe and wake
 For yngland that had suche sorowis sare. 3033

(381)

Mordred can-
 not obtain
 possession of
 the tower
 of London,
 Mordred had than lyen fuH longe,
 But the towre myght he neuer wynne,
 With strength ne with stoure stronge,
 ne with none other kynnes gynne ; 3037
 and in his
 fear of
 Arthur gets
 ready to
 keep him out
 of the king-
 dom.
 Hys fader dred he euyr A-monge,
 There-fore hys bale he nylle not blynne ;
 He went to warne hem AH with wronge
 The kyngdome that he was crownyd inne. 3041

(382)

Forthe to dover þan gan he Ryde,
 AH the costys wele he kende ;
 To erlys And to barons on ylk A syde
 Grete yiftis he gaffe And lettres send, 3045
 [leaf 123, bk.] And for-sette the see on ylke A syde
 With bold men And bowes bente ;
 Fro yngland, that is brode And wyde,
 hys owne fader he w d deffend. 3049

(383)

Arthur re-
 turns to
 England,
 and is pre-
 vented from
 landing at
 Dover.
 Arthur, that was mykelle of myght,
 With hys folke come over the flode,
 An C galeyse that were welle dyght
 With barons bold And hys of blode ; 3053
 he wende to haue landyd, as it was Ryght,
 At Dower, ther hym thoght fuH gode,
 And ther he fande many An hardy knyght
 That styffe in stoure A-gaynste hym stode. 3057

(384)

He lands
 elsewhere,
 however,
 Arthur sone hathe take the land
 That hym was leveste in to lende ;
 hys fele fomen that he ther found,
 he wende by-fore had bene hys frend. 3061

The kynge was wrothe And weliney wode,
 And with hys men he gan vp wend ;
 So strong A stoure was vpon that stronde
 That many A man ther had hys end. 3065

and prepares
for battle.

(385)

Syr gawayne armyd hym in that stounde ;
 Allas ! to longe hys hede was bare ;
 he was seke And sore vnsond ;
 hys woundis greuyd hym full sare ; 3069
 One hytte hym vpon the olde wounde
 With A tronchon of An ore ;
 There is good gawayne gone to grounde,
 That speche spake he neuyr more. 3073

In the fight
Gawayne is
hit on the
old wound,
and never
speaks again.

(386)

Bold men, with bowes bentte,
 Boldely vp in botes yode,
 And Ryche hauberkis they Ryve and Rente,
 that Throw-owte braste the Rede blode ; 3077
 Grounden gleyves throw hem wente ;
 Tho games thoght theym nothyng gode ;
 But by that strong stoure was stente,
 The stronge stremys Ran AH on blode. 3081

The battle is
severe,

(387)

Arthur was so moche of myght,
 Was ther none that hym with-stode ;
 He hewyd vpon ther helmes bryght,
 That throw ther brestes Ran the blode ; 3085
 By than that endyd was the fight,
 The false were feld, som wer fledde
 To canterbery AH that nyght,
 To warne ther master, syr mordred. 3089

but in the
end Mor-
dred's men
are defeated.
[leaf 134]

(388)

Mordred than made hym bowne
 And boldely he wylle batayle A-byde,
 With helme, scheld, And hauberke browne ;
 So AH hys Rowte gan forthe Ryde ; 3093

Mordred now
goes forth
himself to the
battle,

when a
warrior of
Barnaburgh
in the
morow.

Then hem mette vpon barnaburgh,
Fist ay in the mornynge tyde :
Woe paynes past and pynful was
Gently they can agayne Ryde :

3097

(389)

Arthur was at Ryde A-Ryde
And hurys hys herte on nyght,
And mornynge comyn dail and day,
As mayntayn that was false in fyght.
They ficht all that longe day
Till the nyght was nyghed nyghte ;
Woe had in some wyle nyghte saye
That sone A sone neuer he syghte.

3101

3105

(390)

Arthur than ficht with hert good—
A nobler knyght was neuer noon ;
Throw helmes in-to hede ys yode
And steryd knyghtis bothe blode And bone.
Mordred for wrathe was nye wode,
Callyd hys folke And sayd to hem One :
“ Releve yow, for crosse on Rode !
Alas ! thys day so sone is goone !”

3109

3113

(391)

Fele men lyeth on bankys bare
With bryght brondys throw-owte borne ;
Many A doughty man dede was thar,
And many A lord hys lyfe hathe lorne ;
Mordred was full of sorowe And care ;
At canterbery was he vpon the morne ;
And Arthur all nyght he dwellyd thare,
Hye frely folke lay hym by-forne.

3117

3121

(392)

Arthur burys
his dead,

Erely on the morow tyde
Arthur bad hys hornys blowe,
And callyd folke on euery syde,
And many A dede beryed on A rowe,

3125

Gawayne is buried, and Arthur goes to Salisbury. 95

In pittes that was depe And wyde ;
 On Iche An hepe they layd hem lowe,
 So AH that ouer gone And Ryde [leaf 124, bk.]
 Som by there markys men myght knowe. 3129

(393)

Arthur went to hys dyner thane—
 hys frely folke hym folowed faste—
 But whan he fand syr gawayne 3133
 In A shyppe laye dede by A maste,
 Or euyr he coveryd myght or mayne,
 An C tymes hys hert nyghe braste.
 [.
 no gap in the MS.] 3135 b
 3135 c

(394)

Thay layd syr gawayne vpon A bere
 And to the casteH they hym bare,
 And in A chapeH A-mydde the quere
 That bold baron they beryed thare. 3139
 Arthur than changyd AH hys chere ;
 What wondyr thoghe hys hert was sare !
 hys suster sone, that was hym dere,
 Off hym shold he here neuyr mare. 3143

(395)

Syr Arthur, he wolde no lenger A-byde ;
 Than had he AH maner of euyH Reste ;
 He sought aye forthe the southe syde
 And toward walys wente he weste ; 3147
 At salusbury he thought to byde,
 At that tyme he thought was beste,
 And calle to hym by Whytesontyde
 Barons bold to batayle preste. 3151

(396)

Vnto hym came many A doughty knyght,
 For wyde in worlde theyse wordys sprange,
 That syr Arthur hade AH the Ryght,
 And mordred warred on hym with wronge. 3155

but when he
 finds Ga-
 wayne among
 them, his
 heart almost
 broke.

They lay
 Gawayne's
 dead body
 on a bier,
 and bear it to
 a chapel in
 the castle.

Arthur goes
 in the direc-
 tion of Wales,
 and intends
 to stop at
 Salisbury
 to gather
 together his
 forces there.

Many bold
 knights join
 Arthur.

Hydowse it was to se *with* syght,
 Arthur-is oste was brode And longe,
 And mordred that was mykeH of myght
With grete gyftes made hym stronge. 3159

(397)

It is fixed
 that there is
 to be a battle
 after the
 feast of the
 Trinity.

Sone After the feste of the trynyte
 Was A batayle by-twene hem sette,
 That A sterne batayle ther shuld be ;
 For no lede wold they it lette ; 3163
 And syr Arthur makethe game And glee
 For myrth that they shuld be mette ;
 And syr mordred can to the contre,
With fele folke that ferre was fette. 3167

(398)

The night
 before the
 [leaf 125]
 battle
 Arthur has
 a vision.

He thought
 that he was
 seated
 crowned on
 a great wheel.

At nyght whan Arthur was brought in bedd—
 He shuld haue batayle vppon the morow—
 In stronge sweu[en]lys he was by-stedde,
 That many A man that day shuld haue sorow ; 3171
 hym thowht he satte in gold AH gledde,
 As he was comely kynge *with* crowne,
 vpon A whele that fuH wyde spredd,
 And AH hys knyghtis to hym bowne. 3175

(399)

Down below
 him there
 was a black
 water full of
 dragons.

The whele was ferly Ryche And Rownd,
 In world was neuyr none halfe so hye ;
 There-on he satte Rychely crownyd
With many A besaunte broche And be ; 3179
 he lokyd downe vpon the grownd,
 A blake water ther vndyr hym he see,
With dragons fele there lay vn-bownde,
 That no man durst hem nyghe nyee. 3183

(400)

The wheel
 turned, and
 the dragons
 caught him
 by the limbs.

he was wondyr ferd to falle
 A-monge the fendys ther that faught ;
 The whele ouer-tornyd ther *with*-AH
 And eueryche by A lymme hym caught. 3187

The kynge gan lowde crye And calle,
As marred man of wytte vn-saught ;
hys chambyr layns wakyd hym ther with-AH
And woodely oute of hys slepe he raught.

3191 The king
cries aloud
on account
of his vision,
and his
chamberlains
awaken him,

(401)

AH nyght gan he wake And wepe,
With dreary hert And sorowful stevyn,¹
And A-gaynste day he felle on slepe ;
A-boute hym was sette tapers sevyn ;
Hym thought Syr gawayne hym dyd kepe
With mo folke þan men can nevyn,
By A Ryuer that was brode And depe ;
AH semyd Angellys cam from heuyn.

3195 but towards
day he falls
asleep again
and has a
vision of
Gawayne who
is followed by
angels, as it
seemed.
3199

(402)

The kynge was neuyr yit so fayne,
hys soster sone whan that he sye ;
“ Welcome,” he sayd, “ syr gawayne ;
And thou myght leue, welle were me.
Now, leue frend, with-uten layne,
What Ar tho folke that folow the ? ”
“ Sertis, syr,” he sayd A-gayne,
“ They byde in blysse ther I motte be.

3203

3207 Gawayne
explains that
these are the
spirits of

(403)

lordys they were And ladyes hende,
Thys worldys lyffe that hanne for-lorne ;
Whyle I was man on lyffe to lende,
A-gaynste her fone I faught hem forne ;
now fynde I them my moste Frende :
They blysse the tyme that I was borne ;
They Asked leve with me to wende
To mete with yow vpon thys morne.

3211 lords and
ladies whom
he had aided
in life, and
who are now
his best
friends.

[leaf 125, bk.]

3215

(404)

A monthe day of trewse moste ye take
And than to batayle be ye bayne ;
yow comethe to helpe lancelot du lake,
With many A man mykeH of mayne :

3219 Gawayne
exhorts
Arthur to
conclude a
month's
truce with
Mordred,
saying that
he will
then have
Lancelot's
assistance.

¹ MS. chere.

The king is
greatly
disturbed,

To-morne the batayle ye moste for-sake
Or ellys, certis, ye sha^{ll} be slayne."
The kynge gan woefully wepe and wake,
And sayd : " Allas ! thys Rewffu^{ll} Rayne ! " 3223

(405)

and tells his
lords of what
Gawayne's
spirit had
urged.

hastely hys clothys on hym he dyde,
And to hys lordys gan he saye :
" In stronge sweyneys I haue bene stad,
That glad I may not for no gamys gaye. 3227
We muste vnto syr mordred sende
And founde to take An-other day,
Or trewly thys day I mon be shende,
Thys know I in bed as I laye. 3231

(406)

He sends Sir
Lucan de
Boteler and
others to
propose a
truce to
Mordred.

Goo thow, syr lucan de boteler,
That wyse wordys haste in wolde,
And loke that thou take *with* the here
Bysshopys fele and barons bolde." 3235
Forthe went they AH in fere,
in trew bokys as it is tolde,
To syr mordred and hys lordis there they were,
And an C knyghtis AH vn-tolde. 3239

(407)

They deliver
the message,

The knyghtis that ware of grete valoure,
By-fore syr mordred as they stode,
They gretyn hym *with* grete honowre,
As barons bold And hye of blode : 3243
" Ryght wele the gretys kynge Arthur,
And praythe the *with* mylde mode,
A monethe day to stynte thys stoure,
For hys loue that dyed on Rode." 3247

(408)

but Mordred
rejects the
proposal.

mordred, that was bothe kene And bolde,
made hym breme As Any bore at bay,
And sware by Iudas that Ihesus¹ sold :
" Suche sawes Ar not now to saye ; 3251

¹ Ihc. in MS., i. e. Jesus Christ.

A meeting between Arthur and Mordred is arranged for. 99

That he hathe hyght he shaH it hold ;
The tone of vs shaH dye thys day ;
And telle hym trewly that I tolde,
I schaH hym marre, yife that I may." 3255

(409)

" Syr, thay sayd, with-owten lese,
Thow; thou And he to batayle bowne,
many A ryche shaH rewe that reasse,
By AH by dalte vpon thys downe ; 3259
yit were it better for to sease,
And lette [hym] be kyng and bere the crowne ;
And after hys dayes, fuH dredelesse,
ye to welde AH yngland, towre And townne." 3263

Arthur's
messengers
[leaf 126]
then propose
a cessation of
war on the
condition
that Arthur
should rule
the rest of
his life,
but that
Mordred
should be his
successor.

(410)

mordred tho stode styлле A whyle,
And wrothely vp hys eyne there wente,
And sayd : " wyste I it were hys wylle
To yeue me cornwale And kente, 3267
lette vs mete vpon yonder hylle
And talke to-gedyr with gode entente ;
Suche forwardys to fuH-fylle,
There-to shaH I me sone Assent. 3271

Mordred
in reply
says that he
is willing to
discuss
terms, if
Cornwall and
Kent be
ceded him,

(411)

And yiffe we may with spechys spede,
With trew trowthes of entayle,
hold the bode-worde that we bede,
To yeue me kente And cornwayle, 3275
Trew loue shaH ther lenge And lende ;
And, sertis, forwardys yif we fayle,
Aythur to sterte vppon A stede,
styffely for to do batayle." 3279

but that, if
these terms
are violated,
the war will
be renewed.

(412)

" Sur, wyll ye come in suche maner,
With xij knyghtis or fourtene,
Or ellys AH your strenghe in fere,
With helmes bryght And hauberkys shene?" 3283

Arthur's
knights wish
to arrange
about the
meeting for
the discussion
of terms.

100 *The King and Mordred prepare to come together.*

Mordred says
that it must
take place
between the
armies,
with the
hosts near
at hand.

"Se[r]tys, nay," than said he thore,
"Othur warke thou thare not wene,
But bothe oure hoostis shaH nyghe nere
And we shalle talke them by-twene." 3287

(413)

Arthur's
messengers
return to
him and
report what
Mordred has
said.

They toke ther leue, *with*-owten lese,
And wyghtely vpon there way wente ;
To kyng Arthur the way they chese,
there that he satte *with*-in hys tente. 3291
"Syr, we haue proferyd pease,
Yiffe ye wille ther-to Assente :
Gyffe hym the crowne After your dayes
And in yower lyffe cornwayle and kente ; 3295

(414)

[leaf 126, bk.]

To hys by-hestē yiffe ye wiH holde,
And your trouthe trewly ther-to plyght,
maketh AH redy your men bolde,
With helme, swerd And hauberke bryght ; 3299
ye schaH mete vppon yone molde
That ayther oste may se *with* syght ;
And yiff *your* foreward fayle to holde,¹
There is no bote but for to fyght." 3303

(415)

Arthur gets
ready for the
meeting with
all his host,

But whan Arthur herd thys nevyne,
Trewly ther-to he hathe sworne,
And Arayed hym with batayles seuyn,
With brode baners by-fore hym borne ; 3307
They lemyd lyght As Any leuyn²
Whan they shold mete vpon the morne.
There lyves no man vndyr heuyn
A feyrer syght hath sene by-forne. 3311

(416)

but Mordred
has twelve
men to every
one of
Arthur's.

But mordred many men had mo ;
So mordred that was mykeH of mayne,
he had euyr xij A-gaynste hym two
Off barons bold to batayle bayne. 3315

¹ Jhu merc *at top of* leaf 126, back.

² MS. lemyne.

Arthur And mordred—bothe were thro—
Shuld mete bothe vpon A playne;
The wyse shuld come to And fro
To make A-cord, the sothe to sayne.

3319

(417)

Arthur in hys herte hathe Caste
And to hys lordis gan he saye:
"To yonder traytour haue I no truste
But that he wolþ vs falselly be-traye,
yiff we may not oure forwardys faste.
And ye se any wepyn drayne,
presythe forthe As *princes* praste,
That he & All hys hoste be slayne."

3323

Arthur tells his lords that he distrusts Mordred, and that at the least sign of treachery they must attack their enemies vigorously.

3327

(418)

mordred, that was kene And thro,
hys frely folke he sayd to-forne:
"I wote that Arthur is fuþ woo
That he hathe thus hys landys lorne;
With fourtene knyghtis And no mo
shaþ we mete at yondyr thorne;
yiff Any treason by-twene vs go,
That brode baners forth be borne."

3331

Mordred expresses the same distrust of Arthur, and gives his men the same directions.

3335

(419)

Arthur with knyghtis fully xiiij,
To that thorne on fote they fonde,
With helme, sheld, And hauberke shene;
Ryght so they trotted vpon þe grownde.
But As they A-cordyd shulde haue bene,
An Edder glode forth vpon the grownde;
he stange A knyght, that men myght sene
That he was seke And fuþ vn-sownde.

3339

Arthur, with fourteen knights, goes to the thorn-tree, where the meeting is to be, but, when they were approaching an agreement, it happened that an adder stung one of the knights,

3343

(420)

Owte he brayed with a swerd bryght;
To kylle the Adder had he thogh[t]e;
Whan Arthur party saw that syght,
Frely they to-gedyr sought;

3347

who drew his sword to kill it.

Arthur's men suspect treachery at once,

[leaf 127]

There was no-thinge with-stande theym myght ;
 They wend that treason had bene wroghte.
 That day dyed many A doughty knyght,
 And many A bolde man was brought to noght. 3351

(421)

and the two
parties assail
each other.

Arthur stert vpon hys stede ;
 he saw no thyng hym with-stand myght ;
 mordred owte of wytte nere yede,
 And wrothely in-to hys sadyll he lyght ; 3355
 Off A-corde was no-thing to bede,
 But fewtred sperys and to-geder sprete ;
 Full many A doughty man of dede
 Sone there was leyde vpon the bente. 3359

(422)

mordred I-maryd many A man,
 And boldely he gan hys batayle abyde ;
 So sternely oute hys stede Ranne,
 many A rowte he gan throw Ryde ; 3363
 Arthur of batayle neuyr blanne
 To dele woundys wykke and wyde ;
 Fro the morow that it by-ganne
 Tylle it was nere the nyghtis tyde, 3367

The battle
lasted all day,

(423)

There was many A spere spente,
 And many A thro word they spake ;
 many A bronde was bowyd and bente
 And many A knyghtis helme they brake ; 3371
 Ryche helmes they Roffe and rente ;
 The Ryche rowtes gan to-gedyr Rayke,
 An¹ C thousand vpon the bente ;
 The boldest or evyn was made Ryght meke. 3375

and a hun-
dred thousand
men were
engaged in it.

(424)

Sythe bretayne owte of troy was sought
 And made in bretayne hys owne wonne,
 Suche wondrys neuyr ere was wroght,
 Neuyr yit vnder the sonne ; 3379

¹ MS. And.

By evyn leuyd was there noght
That euyr steryd with blode or bone
But Arthur and ij that he thedyr broghte,
And mordred was levyd there Alone. 3383

By evening
the only
survivors
were Arthur,
with two of
his men, and
Mordred.

(425)

The tone was lucan de botelere,
That bled at many A bale-full wound,
And hys brodyr, syr bedwere,
Was sely seke and sore vnsounde. 3387
Than spake Arthur these wordys there :
" ShaH we not brynge thys theffe to ground ?"
A spere he gryped *with* felH chere,
And felly they gan to-gedyr found. 3391

The com-
panions of
Arthur who
survived
were Sir
Lucan de
Botelere and
Sir Bedwere,
and both were
wounded.

Arthur assails
Mordred

(426)

he hytte mordred amydde the breste
And oute At the bakke bone hym bare ;
There hathe mordred hys lyffe loste,
That speche spake he neuyr mare ; 3395
But kenely vp hys Arme he caste
And yaff Arthur A wound sare,
In-to the hede throw the helme And creste,
That iij tymes he swownyd thare. 3399

and slays
him,
[leaf 127, bk.]
but Arthur
is himself
so sorely
wounded by
Mordred that
he swoons
thrice.

(427)

Syr lucan And syr Bedwere
By-twene theym two the kyngre vp-held ;
So forthe went tho iij in fere,
And AH were slayne that lay in feld. 3403
The doughty kyngre that was hem dere,
For sore myght not hym-self weld ;
To A chapelle they went in fere—
Off bote they saw no better beld. 3407

Sir Lucan
and Sir
Bedwere take
the king to a
chapel,

(428)

AH nyght thay in the chapeHe laye,
Be the see syde, As I yow newyn, i
To mary mercy cryand aye,
With drery herte and sorowfull stevyn ; 3311

and there
they lay all
night praying
for Arthur.

And to hyr leue sonne gan they pray :

“Thesu, for thy namys sevyn,

Wis hys sowle the Ryght way,

That he lese not the blysse of heuyn.”

3415

(429)

Sir Lucan de
Boteler
observes
people
robbing the
dead on the
field of battle.

As syr lucan de boleter stode,

he sey folk vppon playnes hye ;

Bold barons of bone and blode,

They Refte¹ theym besaunt, broche, and bee ; 3419

And to the kyng Agayne thay yode,

Hym to warne with wordys slee ;

3421

[. 3421 b

. no gap in the MS.]

3421 c

(430)

To the kyng spake he full styll,

Rewffully as he myght than Rowne :

“Sir, I haue bene At yone hylle,

There fele folke drawen to the downe ;

3425

I note whedyr they wyll vs good or ylle,

I rede we buske And make vs bowne,

and he urges
the king to
go elsewhere.

yiff it be your worthy wyll,

That we wende to som towne.”

3429

(431)

The king bids
Sir Lucan
lyft him up,

“Now, syr lucan, As thow Radde,

lyfte me vp, whyle that I may laste.”

Bothe hys Armes on hym he sprad

With All hys strengh to hold hym faste.

3433

The kyng was wondyd and for-bled

And swownyng on hym hys eyne he caste ;

but his
embrace kills
Sir Lucan.

Syr lucan was hard by-stadde ;

He held the kyng to hys owne herte braste.

3437

(432)

Whan the kyng had swounyd there,

By an Auter vp he stode ;

Syr lucan, that was hym dere,

[leaf 12^v]

Lay dele and fomyd in the blode.

3441

¹ MS. Reste.

Arthur charges Sir Bedwere to cast Excalaber into the sea. 105

Hys bold brothyr, Sir Bedwere,
FuH mykeH mornyd in hys mode ;
For sorow he myzte not nyghe hym nere,
But euыр wepyd As he were wode.

Sir Bedwere
mourns for
his brother's
death.

3445

(433)

The kynge tornyd hym there he stode,
To syr Bedwere with wordys kene:
"Have Excalaber, my swerd[e] good ;
A better brond was neuыр sene ;
Go, Caste it in the salt flode
And thou shalt se wonder, as I wene.
hуe the faste, for crosse on Rode,
And telle me what thou haste ther sene."

The king
commands
Bedwere to
cast his good
sword,
Excalaber,
into the sea
and report
to him what
happens.

3449

3453

(434)

The knyght was both hende and frec,
To save that swerd he was fuH glad,
And thought " whethyr I better bee,
yif neuыр man it After had ;
And I it caste in-to the see,
Off mold was neuыр man so mad."
The swerd he hyd vndyr A tree,
And sayd : " syr, I ded as ye me bad."

Sir Bedwere,
reflecting
that it is a
pity to throw
away the
sword,

3457

3461

hides it
under a tree,
but tells
Arthur that
he has done
his bidding.

(435)

"What saw thow there?" than sayd the kynge,
"Telle me now, yif thow can."
"Sertes, syr," he sayd, "nothyng
But watres depe And wawes wanne."
"A! now thou haste broke my byddyng!
Why haste thou do so, thow false man?
A-nother bode thou muste me bryng."
Thanne carefully the knyght forthe Ranne

The king
wishes to
know what
Sir Bedwere
saw,
but when
he replies,
"nothing but
waters deep
and waves
wan,"
Arthur re-
proaches him
and sends
him forth
again.

3465

3469

(436)

And thought the swerd yit he wold hyde,
And keste the scauberke in the flode.
"yif Any Aventurs shaH be-tyde,
There-by shaH I se tokenys good."

This time
Sir Bedwere
casts the
sheath into
the flood,

3473

and again
reports to the
king that he
has fulfilled
his command.

In-to the see he lette the scauberke glyde ;
A whyle on the land hee there stode,
Than to the kynge he wente that tyde,
And sayd : "syr, it is done, by the Rode." 3477

(437)

The king
recognizes
the false-
hood and
reproaches
him a second
time.

"Saw thou Any wondres more ?"
"Sertys, syr, I saw nought."
"A ! false traytor," he sayd thore,
"Twyse thou haste me treson wrought ; 3481
That shaH thou rew sely sore ;
And, be thou bold, it shal be bought."
The knyght than cryed : "lord, thyn ore !"
And to the swerd sone he sought. 3485

(438)

Sir Bedwere
now goes a
third time
and throws
the sword
into the sea.
[leaf 128, bk.]

Syr bedwere saw that bote was beste,
And to the good swerd he wente ;
In-to the see he hyt keste ;
Than myght he se what that it mente. 3489

A hand comes
up out of
the water,
seizes the
sword,
brandishes it
and disap-
pears.

There cam An hand with-outen Reste
Oute off the water And feyre it hente,
And brandysshyd As it shuld braste,
And sythe, as gleme, A-way it glente. 3493

(439)

When Sir
Bedwere tells
the king of
what he has
seen,
Arthur bide
him help him
to the strand.

To the kynge A-gayne wente he thare,
And sayd : "leve syr, I saw An hand ;
Oute of the water it cam AH bare,
And thryse brandysshyd that Ryche brande." 3497
"helpe me sone that I ware there."
he lede hys lord vnto that stronde ;
A ryche shyppe, with maste And ore,
FuH of ladyes, there they fonde. 3501

There they
find a rich
ship full of
ladies,

(440)

who receive
the king, one
of them, who
calls him
"brother,"
weeping
sorely.

The ladyes, that were feyre and free,
Curteysly the kynge gan they fonge,
And one that bryghtest was of blee
wepyd sore and handys wrange. 3505

"Broder," she sayd, "wo ys me!
 Fro lechyng hastow be to longe.
 I wote that gretely greuyth me,
 For thy paynes Ar fuH stronge." 3509

(441)

The knyght kest A rewfuh rowne, There he stode, sore and vnsownde, And say[de]: "lord, whedyr Ar ye bowne? Allas! whedyr wyH ye fro me fownde?" The kynge spake with A sory sowne: "I wyll wende a lyteH stownde In-to the vale of Avelovne, A whyle to hele me of my wounde."	3513 3517	When Sir Bedwere asks the king whither is he bound, he replies that he will go a little while to the vale of Avelovne to be healed of his wound.
---	--------------------------------------	---

(442)

When the shyppe from the land was broght, Syr bedwere saw of hem no more; Throw the forest forthe he soughte, On hyllys and holtys hore. Of hys lyffe Rought he Ryght noght, AH nyght he went wepyng sore; A-gaynste the day he fownde ther wrought A chapelle by-twene ij holtes hore.	3521 3525	The ship disappears, and Bedwere goes through the forest in great sorrow. Towards daylight he comes upon a chapel,
--	--------------------------------------	---

(443)

To the chapeH he toke the way; There myght he se A woundyr syght; Than saw he where an ermyte laye By-fore A tombe that new was dyghte; And coveryd it was with marboH graye And with Ryche lettres Rayled Aryght; There-on An herse, sothely to saye, With an C tappers lyghte.	3529 3533	where he finds a hermit lying before a new tomb, lighted up with a hun- dred tapers.
---	--------------------------------------	---

(444)

vnto the ermyte wente he thare And Askyd who was beryed there. The ermyte Answeryd swythe yare: "There-of can I telH no more.	3537	He asks the hermit who is buried there, [leaf 129]
--	------	--

but the
hermit only
knows that
the body in
the tomb was
brought there
about mid-
night by
ladies,

A-bowte mydnyght were ladyes here,
In world ne wyste I what they were ;
Thys body they broght vppon a bere
And beryed it *with* woundys sore ; 3541

(445)

who offered
him a hun-
dred pounds
and bad him
pray for the
dead man to
Our Lady.

Besavntis offred they here bryght,
I hope an C povnd and more,
And bad me pray bothe day and nyght
For hym that is buryed in these moldys hore 3545
Vnto ower lady bothe day And nyght,
That she hys sowle helpe sholde."
The knyght redde the lettres A-ryght ;
For sorow he felt vn-to the folde. 3549

(446)

Sir Bedwere
reads the
letters on the
tomb and
exclaims that
it is Arthur.

"Ermyte," he sayd, "*with*-oute lesynge,
here lyeth my lord that I haue lorne,
Bold arthur, the beste kynge
That euyr was in bretayne borne. 3553

He begs the
hermit to let
him live with
him as a
hermit also.

yif me som of thy clothyng,
For hym that bare the crowne of thorne,
And leue that I may *with* the lenge,
Whyle I may leve, And pray hym forne." 3557

(447)

It turns out
that the
hermit is the
Archbishop
of Canterbury
whom Mor-
dred drove
away.

The holy ermyte wold not wounde—
Some tyme Archebishop he was,
That mordred flemyd oute of londe,
And in the wode hys wonnyng chase— 3561
he thankyd Ihesu AH of his sound
That syr bedwere was comyn in pease ;
he resayved hym *with* herte And honde,
To-gedyr to dwelle, *with*-outen lese. 3565

He receives
Sir Bedwere
gladly.

(448)

When the
queen hears
of all these
misfortunes,
she goes to
Ameesbury to
become a
nun.

Whan quene Gaynor, the kynges wyffe,
Wyste that AH was gone to wrake,
A-way she went with ladys fyve
To Avmysbery, A nonne hyr for to make. 3569

Ther-in she lyved An holy lyffe,
 In prayers for to wepe And wake ;
 neuyr After she cowde be blythe ;
 There weryd she clothys whyte And blake. 3573

(449)

Whan thys tydyngis was to launcelot broght,
 What wondyr thowgh hys hert were sore !
 hys men, hys frendys, to hym sought
 And AH the wyse that *with* hym were. 3577
 her gallayes were AH Redy wrought,
 They buskyd theyme And made yare ;
 To helpe Arthur was ther thoght
 And make mordred of blysse full bare. 3581

Lancelot,
 in the mean-
 while, had set
 out to help
 Arthur.

(450)

lancelot had crownd kyngis sevyn,
 Erlys fele And barons bold ;
 The nombyr of knyghtis I can not nevyn,
 The squyres to fele to be told ; 3585
 They lemyd lyght as Any levyn¹
 The wynde was as hem-self wold,
 Throw the grace of god of hevyn ;
 At douer they toke hauyn And hold ; 3589

[leaf 129, bk.]

When he
 reaches
 Dover,

(451)

There herd telle lancelot in that towne,
 In lond it is not for to layne,
 how they had faught at barendowne,
 And how beryed was *syr* gawayne, 3593
 And how mordred wold be kyng *with* crowne,
 And how ayther of theym had other slayn,
 And All that were to batayle bowne
 At salysbery lay dede vpon the playne ; 3597

he hears all
 about the
 war and the
 final battle at
 Salisbury.

(452)

Also in londe herd hyt kythe,
 That made hys hert wonder sare,
 quene Gaynour, the kyngis wyffe,
 Myche had levyd in sorow and care ; 3601

He hears,
 moreover,
 that the
 queen with
 five ladies
 has gone no
 one knows
 where.

¹ MS. leme.

110 *Lancelot lights on the Queen's nunnery.*

A-way she went with ladyes fyve,
 In lond they wyste not whedyr whar,
 Dolwyn dede or to be on lyve;
 That made hys mornyng moche the mare. 3605

(453)

Lancelot tells
 his lords that
 he is going
 away and
 that they
 must wait for
 him fifteen
 days. lancelot clepid hys kyngis with crowne,
 Syr bors stode hym nere be-syde;
 he sayd: "lordyngis, I wyll wend to-forne,
 And by these bankys ye shall A-bye 3609
 Vnto fyftene dayes at the morne.
 In lond what so euyr vs be-tyde,
 To herkyn what lord hys lyffe hathe lorne,
 loke ye Rappe yow not vp to Ryde." 3613

(454)

For three
 days he went
 westward, There had he nouthur Roo ne Reste,
 But forthe he went with drery mode,
 And iij dayes he went euyr weste,
 As man that cowde nother yve^{ll} nor good; 3617
 Than syghe he where A towre by weste
 Was byggyd by A burnys flode;
 There he hopyd it were beste
 For to gete hym som lyves stode. 3621

(455)

till by chance
 he came to
 the nunnery
 where the
 queen was. As he cam throw A cloyster clere—
 A^{ll}-moste for wepyng he was mad—
 he see A lady bryght of lere,
 In nonnys clothyng was she clad. 3625
 Thryse she swownyd swyftely there,
 So stronge paynes she was in stad^{de}
 That many A man¹ than^{de} nyghed hyr nere,
 And to hyr chambyr was she ladde. 3629

The queen
 swoons at the
 sight of him,
 and has to
 be taken to
 her chamber.

(456)

The nuns do
 not under-
 stand the
 queen's
 trouble; "Mercy, madame," they sayd A^{ll},
 For Ihesu, that is kyng of blysse,
 Is there Any byrd in boure or halle
 hathe wrathed yow?" she sayd: "nay, I-wysse." 3633

¹ nonne ?

lancelot to hyr gan they calle,
 The Abbes and the other nonnys I-wysse,
 They that wonyd *with-in* the walle;
 In covnselle there than sayd she¹ thus : 3637

they call
 Lancelot
 before her,
 however,

(457)

“ Abbes, to you I knowlache here
 That throw thys ylke man And me,
 For we to-gedyr han loved vs dere,
 AH thys sorowfuH werre hathe be ; 3641
 my lord is slayne, that had no pere,
 And many A doughty knyght And free ;
 There-fore for sorowe I dyed nere,
 As sone As I euyr hym gan see— 3645

and she tells
 the abbes
 and the other
 nuns that she
 and this man
 have been the
 cause of all
 the war,

(458)

Whan I hym see, the sothe to say,
 AH my herte by-gan to colde,
 That euyr I shuld A-byde thys day,
 To se so many barons bolde 3649
 Shuld for vs be slayne A-way ;
 Oure wylle hathe be to sore bought sold ;
 But god, that AH myghtis maye,
 Now hathe me sette where I wyH hold ; 3653

but that now
 she has no
 thought
 except for the
 salvation of
 her soul.

(459)

I-sette I am In suche A place,
 my sowle hele I wyH A-byde,
 Telle god send me som grace,
 Throw mercy of hys woundys wyde 3657
 That I may do so in thys place
 my synnys to A-mende thys ilke tyde,
 After to haue A syght of hys face
 At domys day on hys Ryght syde. 3661

(460)

There-fore, syr lancelot du lake,
 For my loue now I the pray,
 my company thow Aye for-sake
 And to thy kyngdome thow take thy way ; 3665

She accord-
 ingly begs
 Lancelot to
 leave her for
 ever, and
 return to his
 kingdom

¹ MS. they.

And kepe thy Reme from werre and wrake,
and take unto himself a wife. And take A wyffe with her to play,
 And loue wele than thy worldys make,
 God yiff yow Ioye to-gedyr, I pray ! 3669

(461)

Vnto god I pray, AH-myghty kynge,
 he yeffe yow to-gedyr Ioye And blysse,
she beseeches him never again to have any communication with her. But I be[se]che the in AH thyng
 That newyr in thy lyffe After thyssoc 3673
 Ne come to me for no sokerynge,
 Nor send me sond, but dwelle in blyasse ;
 I pray to god euyr lastyng
 [leaf 130, bk.] To¹ Graunte me grace to mend my mysse." 3677

(462)

Lancelot protests against this, " Now, swete madame, that wold I not doo,
 To haue AH the world vnto my mede² ;
 [So vntrew fynd ye me neuyr mo ;
 It for to do cryste me for-bede ! 3681

(463)

For-bede it god that euyr I shold
 A-gaynste yow worche so grete vnryght,
 Syne we to-gedyr vpon thys mold
 haue led owre lyffe by day And nyght ! 3685
and wishes to lead the same life as she, Vnto god I yiffe a heste to holde,
 The same desteny that yow is dyghte
 I wiH Resseyve in som house bolde,
 To please here-After god AH-myght ; 3689

(464)

To please god AH that I maye
 I shal here-After do myne entente,
continuing to live continually. And euyr for yow specyAlly pray,
 While god wyH me lyffe lente." 3693
 " A ! wylte thou so," the quene gan say,
 " FuH-lyH thys forward that thou has ment ?"
 Lancelot sayd : " yiff I sayd nay,
 I were wole worthy to be brent ; 3697

¹ From the top of leaf 130, back, to the end the initial letter of each line is stained with red.

² MS. mode.

(465)

Brent to bene worthy I were,

Yiff I wold take non suche A lyffe,

To byde in penance, as ye do here,

And suffre for god sorow and stryffe ;

3701

As we in lykyng lyffed in fere,

By mary moder, made and wyffe,

TyH god vs departe *with* dethes dere,

To penance I yeld me here As blythe.

3705

Lancelot
declares that
he is going
to lead a life
of penance
as a hermit.

(466)

AH blyve to penance I wyH me take

As I may fynde Any ermyte

That wyH me Resseyue for goddys sake,

me to clothe *with* whyte And blake."

3709

The sorow that the tone to the tother gan make

myght none erthely man se hytte.

"madame," than sayd launcelot de lake,

"kysse me, And I shaH wende as-tyte."

3713

At parting
Lancelot
wishes to
kiss the
queen,

(467)

"nay," sayd the quene, "that wyH I not ;

launcelot, thynke on that no more ;

To Absteyne vs we muste haue thought,

For suche we haue delyted in ore ;

3717

lett vs thynk on hym that vs hathe bought

And we shaH please god ther-fore ;

Thynke on thys world how there is noght

But warre And stryffe And batayle sore."

3721

but she says
that they
must abstain
now and
think only
of God and
the troubles
of the world.

(468)

What helpeth lenger for to spelle ?

With that they gan departe in twene,

But none erthely man covde telle

The sorow that there by-gan to bene ;

3725

Wryngyng ther handis and lowde they yelle,

As they neuyr more shuld blynne,

And sythe in swonne bothe downe they felle ;

Who saw that sorow euyr myght it mene.

3729

MORTE ARTHUR.

I

[leaf 131]
Lancelot and
the queen
part in great
sorrow,

114 *Lancelot finds the Archbishop of Canterbury in a chapel.*

(469)

and the
attendants
of each try
to comfort
them.

But ladyes than *with* mornynge chere,
In-to the chambyr the quene they bare,
And AH full besy made theym there
To cover the quene of hyr care. 3733
many Also that *with* lancelot were,
They comforte hym w[ith] rewful care ;
Whan he was coveryd, he toke hys gere
And went frome thense *with*-outen mare ; 3737

(470)

Lancelot
hastens away
to a forest,

hys hert was hevy As Any lede,
And leuer he was hys lyffe haue lorne ;
he sayd : " Ryghtwosse god ! what is my Rede ?
Allas ! for-bare, why was I borne ? " 3741
A-way he went, as he had fled,
To A foreste that was hym by-forne ;
hys lyffe fayne he wold haue leuyd ;
hys Ryche A-tyre he wold haue of-torne. 3745

(471)

in which at
dawn he
comes upon
a chapel
where a
priest is
about to hold
mass.

AH nyght gan he wepe And wrynge
And went A-boute As he were wode ;
Erely, As the day gan sprynge,
Tho syghe he where A chapeH stode ; 3749
A belle herd he rewfully Rynges ;
he hyed hym than And thedyr yode ;
A preste was Redy for to synge,
And masse he herd *with* drery mode. 3753

(472)

It is the
Archbishop
of Canterbury
who is sing-
ing mass, and
Sir Bedwere
is there.

The Arshebysshoppe was ermyte thare,
That flemyd was for hys werkys trew ;
The masse he sange with syghyng sare,
And ofte he changyd hyde and hewe ; 3757
Syr bedwere had sorow And care
And ofte mornyd for tho werkys newe ;
Aftyр masse was morny[n]ge mare,
Whan Iche of hem othyr knewe. 3761

They
recognise
each other.

(473)

Whan the sorow was to the ende,
 The byshope toke hys obbyte thare,
 And welcomyd launcelot as the hend,
 And on hys knees downe gan he fare : 3765
 "Syr, ye be welcome as oure frende
 Vnto thys byggyng in bankys bare ;
 Were it yower wyth *with* vs to lende
 Thys one nyght, yif ye may [no] mare !" 3769

The arch-
 bishop wel-
 comes
 Lancelot,
 [leaf 131, bk.]

(474)

Whan they hym knew at the laste,
 Feyre in Armys they gan hym folde,
 And sythe he askyd frely faste
 Off Arthur And of other bolde ; 3773
 An C tymes hys hert ne[re] braste,
 Whyle syr Bedwere the tale told.
 To Arthur-is tombe he caste,
 Hys carefuht corage wexid All cold ; 3777

who is filled
 with sorrow
 when Sir
 Bedwere tells
 him of
 Arthur's end.

(475)

He ~~threw~~ hys armys to the walle,
 That Ryche were and bryght of blee ;
 By-fore the e[r]myte he gan downe falle,
 And comely knelyd vpon hys knee ; 3781
 Than he shrove hym of hys synnes Alle
 And prayd he myght hys broder be,
 To serue god in boure and halle,
 That myght-fuht kyng of mercy free. 3785

Lancelot is
 shriven of
 his sins, and
 begs the
 archbishop
 to accept him
 as a brother-
 hermit.

(476)

That holy bisshope nold not blynne,
 But blythe was to do hys boone ;
 He resseyuyd hym *with* wele and wyne
 And thankyd Ihesu trew in trone, 3789
 And shroffe hym ther of hys synne,
 As clene as he had neuyr done none ;
 And sythe he kyste hym cheke and chynne
 And an Abbyte there dyd hym vpon. 3793

The arch-
 bishop gladly
 consents,

and puts an
 appropriate
 habit on him.

(477)

All this time
Lancelot's
host lay at
Dover,
expecting
his return.
Finally with
fifty lords
Lyonell goes
in search of
Lancelot, but
is slain at
London.

hys grete hooste at dover laye,
And wende he shuld have comyn A-gayne,
Tylle After by-felle vpon A day,
Syr lyoneH, that was mekyH of mayne, 3797
With fyfty lordys, the sothe to saye,
To seche hys lord he was fuH fayne;
To london he toke the Ryght way;
Alas for woo! there was he slayne. 3801

(478)

Bors
despatches
Lancelot's
host home,
and goes also
in search of
his lord.

Bors De gawnes wold no lenger Abyde,
But buskyd hym And made AH bowne,
And bad AH the oste homeward Ryde—
God send theym wynd and wedyr Rownd— 3805
To seke lancelot wyH he Ryde.

He and Ector
go different
ways.

Ector and eche dyverse wayes yode,
And bors sowght forthe the weste syde,
As he that cowde nowther yveH nor gode. 3809

[leaf 132]

(479)

Bors comes
to the chapel,
and wishing
to hear masse
there finds
Lancelot.

FuH Erly in A morow tyde
In A foreste he fownd A welle;
he Rode euyr forthe by the Ryver syde,
TyH he had syght of A chapeHe; 3813
There at masse thought he A-byde;
Rewfully he herd A belle Rynge;
Ther lancelot he fand with mekelle pryde
And prayd he myght with hym there dwelle. 3817

(480)

In the space
of half-a-year
seven of the
friends had
gathered
together at
this chapel.

Or the halfe yere were comen to the ende,
There was comyn of there felowse sevyn,
Where ychone had sought there frend,
With sorowfuH herte And drery stevyn; 3821
had neuyr none wyH A-way to wend,
Whan they herd of launcelot nevyn,
But AH to-gedyr there gan they lend,
As it was goddys wyH of heuyn. 3825

(481)

holychē AH tho sevyn yerys		For seven years they all led a life of penance and prayer,
lancelot was preste and masse songe ;		
In penance and in dyverse prayers		
That lyffe hym thought no-thing longe ;	3829	
Syr bors And hys other ferys		
On bokys Redde and bellys Ronge ;		until they were so thin that one could scarcely recognise them.
So lyteH they wexe of lyn And lerys,		
Theym to know it was stronge.	3833	

(482)

hytte felle A-gayne an euyn-tyde		At last Lancelot falls sick,
That launcelot sekenyd sely sare ;		
The bysshop he clepyd to his syde		
And AH hys felaws lesse and mare ;	3837	
he sayd : " bretherne, I may no lenger A-byde,		and tells his companions that he is about to die.
my baleffuH blode of lyffe is bare ;		
What bote is it to hele And hyde ?		
my fowle flesshe wiH to erthe fare.	3841	

(483)

but, bretherne, I pray yow to-nyght,		He entreats them, when he is dead, to take his body back to Joyus Gard.
To-morow, whan ye fynde me dede,		
vpon A bere that ye wyH me dyght		
And to Ioyes garde than me lede ;	3845	
For the loue of god AH-myght,		
Bery my body in that stede ;		
Some tyme my trowthe ther-to I plyght,		
Allas ! me for-thynketh that I so dyd."	3849	

(484)

" mercy, syr," they Sayd AH three,		They do not believe that he is so near death,
" for hys loue that dyed on Rode,		
yif Any yveH haue greuyd the,		
hyt ys bot hevynesse of yower blode ;	3853	
To-morow ye shaH better be.		
Whan were ye but of comforte gode ?"		[leaf 132, bk.]
merely spake AH men but he,		
But streyght vnto hys bed he yode,	3857	but he goes straight to his bed,

(485)

and gets the
archbishop to
come and
shrive him.

And clepyd the bysshope hym vntylle,
And shrove hym of hys synnes clene,
Off AH hys synnes loude and styлле,
And of hys synnes myche dyd he mene; 3861
Ther he Resseyved with good wyлле
God, mary-is sonne, mayden clene.
Than bors of wepyng had neuyr hys fylle;
To bedde they yede than AH by-dene. 3865

(486)

A little while
before day
the arch-
bishop
frightens
every one by
laughing in
his sleep.

A lyteH whyle by-fore the day,
As the bysshop lay in hys bed,
A laughter toke hym there he laye,
That AH they were Ryght sore A-dred. 3869
They wakenyd hym, for sothe to saye,
And Askyd yif he were hard by-sted.
he sayd: "Allas And wele A-way!
Why ne had I lenger thus be ledde? 3873

He is sorry
when they
awaken him,

(487)

and tells
them that he
has had a
beautiful
vision of an
angelic host
bearing
Lancelot to
heaven.

Allas! why nyghed ye me nye,
To A-wake me in word or stevyn?
here was launcelot bryght of blee
With Angellis xxx thousand and sevyn; 3877
hym they bare vp on hye;
A-gaynste hym openyd the gatys of hevyn;
Suche A syght Ryght now I see,
Is none in erthe that myght it nevyn." 3881

(488)

They refuse
to believe
that Lancelot
is dead,

"Syr," thay sayd, "for crosse on Rode,
Dothe suche wordys clene A-way.
Syr lancelot eylythe no-thynge but gode;
he shaH be hole by pryme of day." 3885
CandeH they lyght And to hym yode,
And fownde hym dede, for sothe to saye,
Rede and fayer of flesshe and blode,
Ryght As he in slepyng laye. 3889

but when
they go to
his bed,
they find that
he is.

(489)

"Allas! syr bors, that I was borne!
That euyr I shuld see thys in dede!
The beste knyght hys lyffe hathe lorne
That euyr in stoure by-strode A stede.
Ihesu that crownyd was *with* thorne,
In heuyn hys soule foster and fede!"¹
Vnto the fyfty day at the morne
They lefte not for to synge And Rede,

The
archbishop
laments
Lancelot's
death,

3893

and they hold
services for
his soul,

3897

(490)

And After they made theym A bere,
The bysshop and these other bold,
And forthe they wente, AH in fere
To Ioyes garde, that Ryche hold.
In A chapeÿ a-myddys the quere
A graue they made as thay wold,
And iij dayes they wakyd hym there,
In the casteÿ *with* carys cold.

and after-
wards they
[leaf 135]
bear the body
to Joyus
Gard, and
bury it in a
chapel there.

3901

3905

(491)

Ryght as they stode A-boute the bere
And to bereynge hym shold haue browght,
In cam syr Ector, hys brodyr dere,
That vij yere A-fore had hym sought.
he lokyd vp in-to the quere;
To here A masse than had he thought;
For that they AH Ravysshyd were,
They knew hym and he hem nought.

Just as they
were burying
him. Ector,
who had
been looking
for Lancelot
for seven
years, comes
in.

3909

No one
recognises
him at first.

3913

(492)

Syr bors bothe wepte And songe,
Whan they that feyre faste vnfold;
There was none but hys handys wrange,
The bysshop nor none of the other bold.
Syr Ector than thought longe;
What thys corps was feyne wete he wolde;
An C tymes hys herte nye sprange,
By that bors had hym the tale tolde.

3917

He inquires
whose corpse
it is, and his
heart is
almost
broken when
Bors tells
him that it
is Lancelot's.

3921

¹ In the MS. this line follows l. 3897.

(493)

FuH hendely *syr* bors to hym spakke
 And sayd: "welcome, *syr* Ector, I-wysse;
 here lyethe my lord lancelot du lake,
 for whome that we haue mornynd thus." 3925
 They all
embrace
Lancelot's
dead body,
 Than In Armys they gan hym take,
 The dede body to clyppe And kysse,
 And prayed AH nyght he myght hym wake,
 For Ihesu love, kynge of blysse. 3929

(494)

and Ector is
almost crazed
with grief.
 Syr Ector of hys wytte nere wente,
 Walowed and wronge as he were wode;
 So wofully hys mone he mente,
 hys sorow myngyd AH hys mode; 3933
 When the corps in Armys he hente,
 The terys owte of hys yen yode;¹
 At the laste they myght no lenger stent,
 But beryed hym *with* drery mode. 3937
 At last the
burial is
completed,

(495)

and Lancelot's
companions pray
to Jesus
Christ and
his mother
on behalf of
the soul of
their lord.
 Sythen on there knees they knelyd downe—
 Grete sorow it was to se *with* syght—
 "Vnto Ihesu cryste Aske I A boone,
 And to hys moder, mary bryght. 3941
 lord, As thow madyste bothe sonne and mone,
 And god And man arte moste of myght,
 Brynge thys sowle vnto thy trone,
 And euyr thow Rewdyste on gentyH knyght." 3945
 [leaf 133, bk.]

(496)

Ector also
resolves to
become a
hermit,
 Syr Ector tent not to hys stede,
 Whedyr he wold stynt or Renne Away,
 But *with* theym to dwelle and lede,
 For lancelot AH hys lyffe to pray. 3949
 On hym dyd he armytes wede,
 And to hyr chapeH went hyr way;
 A fourteenyght on fote they yede,
 Or they home come, for sothe to say. 3953
 and after a
fortnight's
journey they
reach their
chapel again.

¹ went was written before yode and then struck out.

(497)

Whan they came to Avmysbery,
 Dede they faunde Gaynour the quene,
 With Roddys feyre and Rede as chery ;
 And forthe they bare hyr theym by-twene,
 And beryed hyr with masse full merry
 By syr Arthur, as I yow mene.
 Now hyght there chapel^{te} glassynbery,[✓]
 An Abbay full Ryche, of order clene.

When they
 come to
 Annesbury,
 they find the
 queen dead
 also.

3957

They take
 her body to
 their chapel,
 which is
 now called
 Glastonbury,
 and bury it
 by the side
 of Arthur.

3961

(498)

Off lancelot du lake telle I no more,
 But thus by-leve these ermytes sevyne ;
 And yit is Arthur beryed thore,
 And quene Gaynour, as I yow ^{te}nevyne ;
 With monkes that ar Ryght of lore.
 They Rede and synge with mylde stevyn :
 " Ihesu, that suffred woundes sore,
 Graunt vs AH the blysse of hevyn !"
 Amen.

Thus the
 seven com-
 panions
 remain there
 as hermits,

3965

and pray
 with their
 monke that
 Jesus may
 grant them
 the bliss of
 heaven.

3969

Explycit le morte Arthur.¹

¹ Explycit le morte Arthur is repeated in different ink, but apparently the same hand.

NOTES.

1. *Lordingis*. This term is very commonly employed by the minstrels in addressing their audiences. That it did not necessarily imply noble birth on the part of those who are thus addressed is evident from passages like the Preamble of the 'Pardoner's Tale,' l. 329, where the Pardoner uses it in speaking to the Canterbury Pilgrims, or again 'Havelok,' l. 1401, where the hero addresses as "Louredinges" the sons of the fisherman, Grim. In his note to 'Athelston,' l. 7 ('Englische Studien,' xiii, 345), Zupitza has brought together a great many instances of the occurrence of this term in the romances.

5. This uninflected genitive form recurs in l. 3346. On the other hand, we have the usual form *Arthurs*, l. 260. The alliterative 'Morte Arthure' (Thornton MS.) shows the same variation. So *Thus endys the emperour of Arthure hondes* (=by Arthur's hands), l. 2225, but *Meangers earnestly at Arthures knyghtez*, l. 2838. In Middle English generally the genitives of proper names often appear without an inflexional ending. So frequently in the case of the name of Philip of Macedon in the 'Wars of Alexander,' e.g. Alexander begins a letter: *I, kyng Philipp soñ þe ferce d' hys fayre ladys*, l. 2415. Cp. the same poem ll. 2535, 2961, 4711. So also in the 'Destruction of Troy,' *Andromaca Worthy Ector wyfe was a we faire*, ll. 3982 f. In this poem we have also *Agamymon* as a genitive, l. 5403. In the 'Holy Grail,' ch. xiii, l. 739, we have *And whanne kyng Eualach steward this beheld To him ward Rod he A ful gret pas*. On this whole subject of uninflected genitives in Middle English see 'Anglia,' xxiv, pp. 211 f., and especially Paul's 'Grundriss der Germanischen Philologie,' i, pp. 1086 f. (2nd edition).

14. *For*. This is no doubt the preposition.

18. For a similar scene where Arthur and his consort, as they lie in bed together, discuss questions that concern the glory of the former, see the Latin romance 'De Ortu Waluuanii' ('Publications of the Modern Language Association of America,' xiii, 424). One may compare with these scenes the "bolster-conversation" between Ailell and Meave which begins the long train of incidents in the famous Irish epic of Táin Bó Cuailgne' (see the 'Cuchullin Saga in Irish Literature' by Eleanor Hull, London, 1898, pp. 111 ff.). It is under similar circumstances that Gorniole, the eldest daughter of King Lear, proposes to her husband in Layamon's 'Brut' (ll. 3285 ff.) that they should deprive the old king of a fourth of his knights. Cp. also the conversation between Darius and Atossa in Herodotus, Book iii, chap. 134.

36. *To dede of Armys for to Ryde*=by riding to deeds of arms. This construction seems to be repeated in l. 2123. Cp. 'Fourre Sonnes of Aymon,' p. 60, *for ye knowe well the offence that your broder hadde doon to me, for to have slayne soo cruelly Lokier*. For examples of the infinitive thus used as the gerund see Kellner's edition of Caxton's 'Blanchardyn and Eglantine' (E. E. T. S.), Introduction, p. 65.

63. *with the dede*=in the act, cp. l. 1747. Also 'Erl of Tolous,' l. 526: *Thou schalt take us wyth the ded*; 'Romaunt of the Rose,' l. 7634: *That ye shulde take him with the dede*; 'Octavian' (Southern version), l. 229: *For sche was founde with þe dede*;

'Sir Tristrem,' l. 3182 :

*And Brengwain þretned ay
To take hem in her dede.*

79. *ya swithe that thou Armyde be.* Cp. ll. 211, 1573, 2550, 3335.
Cp. 'Richard Coer de Lion,' ll. 3066 ff. :

*Takes a Sarezyne yonge and fat ;
In haste that the theff be slayn,
Openyd and hys hyde off flayn.*

Also ll. 3238, 3507. 'Seuyn Sages,' ll. 649 ff. :

*Goh't he seigh to the prisone
And fechcheth forht mine sone,
And quik that he war an-honge
On heghe galewes and on stronge.*

Also l. 3974. 'Destruction of Troy,' ll. 3610 ff. :

*þerfore wackon þi wille into wight dedis,
And þere as sikyng & sorow slees the within
þat þe harme þat þou has and hethyng with all
þas noght vnponissched for pité ne other.*

'Emare,' ll. 1004 f. :

*And sayde : Lord, for þyn honour
My worde þat þou wyll here.*

Cp. moreover, 'Athelston,' l. 374, 'Libeaus Desconus,' l. 608, 'Sir Beues of Hamtoun,' l. 2286. In this construction a verb of wishing is, no doubt, to be understood. The influence of the French *que* + the subjunctive in expressing a wish or command is evident here.

99. *Wyth his shuldres gonne he fold:* See under *fold* (4) in the 'New English Dictionary': "To bend, bow (oneself, the body, or limbs)" and the examples given in illustration, e.g. from the 'Cursor Mundi,' 8965 (Cott.): *To þe tre sco can hir fold.* Cp. besides 'Octavian' (Lincoln MS. of the Northern version), ll. 891 ff. :

*The childe hym hitt one þe schuldir bone,
That to þe pappe þe swerde gan gone,
And þe geaunt to þe grounde gane folde.*

The word is applied even to the heart in 'Sir Eglamour of Artois,' l. 726, in the sense of "sink."

*Of that worme when he had a syght
Hys herte began to folde.*

105. *The kinge stode on a toure on highte.* Cp. 'Sir Triamore,' l. 1420 : *high on a tower stood that good Ladye*; 'Generydes,' l. 2598 : *Clarionas was on the toure on hye*; 'Sir Beues,' l. 3357 : *Saber stod on is tour an hyz*—also ll. 3033 ff, 4082; 'Ipomedon,' B, l. 1897 : *The lady lay in an hye toure.*

110. *is not to hyde.* This formula is more frequent in this romance than in any other. Cp. 'Ipomedon,' A, ll. 3955 f. :

*Yesturday juste I here in white,
To-day in rede, ys not to hyde ;*

'Ywain and Gawain,' 806 f. :

*And soght him in þe maydens hall,
In chambers high (es noght at hide) ;*

'Octavian' (Lincoln MS. of the Northern version), l. 1277 : *In herde es noghte to hide.* This last formula is particularly common in 'Horn Childe,' cp. ll. 39, 57, 669, 751. For examples of this and kindred expressions (*ys not to layne*, etc.), see Breul's 'Sir Gowther,' pp. 175 f

117. *braundisshid yche a bone*. S. under *brandish* (l. c.) in 'N. E. D.' "To flourish about, move vigorously (the limbs, the head, etc.)." The verb is commoner used absolutely without direct object, and with the sense of "to swagger." Cp. 'Babees Book,' *How the Good Wyfe taught her Daughter*, 38: *Braundische not with pin heed*.

165. *Sir, the semys a noble kn[i]ght*. Cp. 'Morte Arthure' (Lincoln MS.), l. 139: *By lukynge withouttym lesse, a lyon the semys*. 'Rowlande and Ottuell,' l. 862, *pam semes bothe felle and ferse*. 'Wars of Alexander,' l. 2000: *Bot pain semys to be softe, as pees sedis preuez*—also ll. 3036, 5399. It will be noticed that the construction is impersonal. For other curious impersonal constructions of the Middle English observe 'Libeaus Desconus' (Cotton MS.), l. 566: *pe ne askapeth so away*; 'Ipomedon,' A, l. 5182: *Sertus, syr, me ouethe to wete*. For *seem* and *must* in the impersonal construction see L. Kellner, 'Englische Studien,' xviii, 287 f.

179. *hyr Rode was rede as blossom on brere*. Cp. 'Seege of Troye,' l. 1416: *Here rode rede as blom on the brere*; 'King of Tars,' ll. 13 f.:
Chaast heo was & feir of chere
Wip rode red so blome on brere.

'Syre Gawene and the Carle of Carelyle,' l. 367: *Her roode was reede, her chek roode*. 'Death and Liffe,' ll. 65 f.:

shee was brighter of her blee then was the bright sonn,
her rudd redder then the rose, that on the rise hangeth.

'Eger and Grine,' l. 217: *her rud was red as rose in raine*. In the Northern version of 'Octavian' (Lincoln MS.), l. 41, we have *whyte so blos-some on pe brere*. For the expressions *her rode was red* and *as bryzt as blome on brere*, see still further respectively Kaluza's note to 'Libeaus Desconus,' 938, and Zupitza's to 'Athelston,' 72.

190. *other mo*. Cf. 'Beues of Hamtoun,' l. 3410: *Wel ten posend oper mo*; 'Sir Eglamour of Artois,' l. 480: *On us and odur moo*; 'Seuyn Sages,' ll. 3645:

The steward wendes, the childe alsua,
And with tham other many ma.

202. *For me ne giff the no thyng ille*. See 821, 1324. Cp. 'Ysumbras,' l. 109: *They wepede alle and gafe pam ill*; *ibid.* 304: *pe lady grete and gafe hir ill*; 'Emare,' l. 778: *Bothe they wepte and yaf hem ille*; 'Octavian' (Lincoln MS. of the Northern version), l. 75: *Gyffe zow no thyng ille*. For *give* in the sense of "make account of," out of which the above formula has developed, see Zupitza, 'Guy of Warwick,' l. 4459.

266. *Breme as Any wilde bore*. The formula *breme as bore* is very frequent in this romance. Cp. 951, 1600, 2101, 2214, 2606, 3249. Cp. 'Cursor Mundi,' l. 4899: *pe sargantz pat ware brem als bare*. 'Golagros and Gawane,' l. 822: *He wourdis brym as ane bair*; Malory's 'Morte Darthur,' p. 820: *Soo vpon the morne there came syre Gawayne, as brym as ony bore*. Cp. also 'Ferumbras,' l. 545, 'Sege of Melayne,' l. 969, 'Romance of Duke Rowlande and of Sir Ottuell of Spayne,' l. 166. The expression is even found in sixteenth century English, 'Roister Doister,' iv, 6: *Never bore so brymme nor tost so hot*.

315. *by them one two*. So 'Octavian' (Lincoln MS. of the Northern version), ll. 1347 ff.:

Lady, we one two
By pe reuer banke salle go
That he may vs see.

Cp. also 'William of Palerne,' l. 1415: *non knew here cunseile but bei pre one*. 'Morte Arthure' (Lincoln MS.), l. 3195: *Alle the senatours are sette*

sere be thame one. 'Wars of Alexander,' l. 755*: *And stighillys hym in som stede, by hym one.*

389. *For why þat* = provided that. This use is exceptional.

399. *What he had herd and sene with sight.* The second member of this clause has frequent parallels in our poem. So ll. 673, 1476, 1627, 1871, 2002, 2143, 2191, 3301. Cp. 'Ferumbras,' l. 193: *þat y so longe scholde lyue alas, to sen hit with my sizte.* 'Sege of Melayne,' ll. 893 f.:

*And a fayre oste of brede þer appon he fand
þat euer he sawe with syghte.*

'Libeaus Desconus,' ll. 1447 ff.:

*What? wenest þou fendes fere,
Uncristened þat I were,
Till I siz þe wiþ sizt?*

402. *a folyd knight.* For the verb "to fool" in the intransitive sense see under *fool* (1) in the 'N. E. D.' "To be or become foolish or insane," and the examples, 'Cleanness,' l. 1422: *al waykned his wyt & wel neze he foles.* Barbour's 'Bruce' (Edinburgh MS.), iv, 222 f.:

*Bot he fulyt, forouten weir,
That gaf treuth to that creature.*

411. *hole and fere.* For examples of this phrase see Hall's note to 'King Horn,' l. 149.

426. For the uninflected genitive cp. 'Beues of Hamtoun,' l. 3193:

*Sire, zhe seide to þat erl sone
'Ich bidde, þow graunte me a bone.'*

For such uninflected genitives in the case of proper names and titles see note to l. 5, above. The want of inflection in such cases is due no doubt to the influence of the Old French uninflected genitive very largely.

480. "*Ector,*" he sayd, "*where thou it were,
That woundid me thus wondir sore?*"

So ll. 3006, 3456. For *where* (= whether) introducing a direct question cp. 'Piers Plowman,' C. xvii, 336: "*Wher clerkus knowe hym nat*" *quath ich* "that kepen holy churche?"—also C. xx, 25. 'House of Fame,' iii, 1779 ff.:

*What? false theves! wher ye wolde
Be famous good, and nothing nolde
Deserve why?*

'Syre Gawene and the Carle of Carlyle,' ll. 509 f.:

*Uher I schatt se enny mor þis knyzt
That hathe ley my body so ner.*

Cp. also 'Wars of Alexander,' ll. 2910, 3810, 'Cleanness,' l. 717, 'York Plays,' xxi, 259:

486. *Syr lyonelle by god þan swore
That myne wolde sene be euyr more.*

For direct discourse introduced by *that* compare the 'Anglo-Saxon Gospel of St. John,' i, 32: *Johannes cydde gewitnesse cweþende þæt ic geseah nyðercumendne Gast of heofenum.* This construction is frequent in the Anglo-Saxon Gospels owing to the influence of the Latin original which derived it in turn from the Greek. See Gorrell, 'Publications of the Modern Language Association of America,' x, 350. Many examples for the French are given by Tobler in 'Vermischte Beiträge zur französischen Grammatik,' i, 218 ff., e. g. Robert de Clary's 'Prise de Constantinople,' 88: *et apres dist Agolanz que "se ma gent est vaincue, je prendre*

baptisme." The construction is not frequent in Middle English, but cp. 'Seuyn Sages,' ll. 3740 f.:

*The yonger sais that "myne sho ys;
For I haue wond with hir alway."*

Caxton's 'Blanchardyn and Eglantine,' 184: *He sayd full angerly to the styward that to an euyl owere hath your lady ben so madde as to mary her self to a ladde.* Cp. Kellner's 'Introduction to Blanchardyn and Eglantine,' p. 90, and for the whole subject of abrupt changes from indirect to direct discourse in Middle English, *ibid.* 98 ff., and Zupitza's note to 'Guy of Warwick,' l. 1785.

556. *Sir yif that youre willis were.* Cp. Barbour's 'Bruce,' i, 618: *Tharfor giff that your willis wer*—also *ibid.* xix, 158. 'Towneley Plays,' xxii, 277:

*Dere lady, if thi will were,
I must tell tythyngys playn.*

'Ipomedon,' B, l. 270: *yff your wille be.* 'Richard Coer de Lion,' ll. 5234 ff.:

*To Kyng Richard forth he wente
And prayed, yiff his wyll be,
Off batayle between thre.*

So 'Sir Emares,' l. 919: 'Horn Childe,' l. 979; 'Seuyn Sages,' ll. 123, 133, etc.; 'Octavian' (Northern version, Lincoln MS.), l. 417. Cp. also Hall's note to 'King Horn,' l. 193.

589. *so thryve or thro.* Cp. 'Pearl,' ll. 867 ff.:

*I seghe, says Iohan, þe lounbe hym stande,
On þe mount of syon ful pryuen & þro.*

'Cursor Mundi,' ll. 14806 ff.:

*fast es he throd und thriuen
And mikel grace ai es him giuen;*

'Destruction of Troy,' l. 6537: *With þre thousand þro men priuond in armys.*

595. *Be the coloures I it knew.* *knew* here is subjunctive.

651. *That nighe of witte she wold wede.* So ll. 787, 914. Cp. 'Octavian' (Northern version, Lincoln MS.), l. 1511: *Of witt als he wolde wede.* 'Wars of Alexander,' l. 1410: *Went wode of paire witt.* For similar expressions see Hall's note to 'King Horn,' l. 1084.

657. *That wiste of hyr priuete.* Cp. 'Arthour and Merlin,' l. 12:

*For þai mo witen & se
Miche of godes priuete.*

'Eger and Grine,' l. 362: *shee shall know nothing of our priuete.* 'Sir Eglamour of Artois,' l. 62: *Ye haue tolde me youre prevyte.* Handlyng Synne, ll. 397 f.:

*And sum beyn goddys pryuyte
þat he shewyþ to warne þe.*

'Squyr of Lowe Degre,' ll. 511 f.:

*He wende in the worlde none had bene
That had knowen of his pryuite*

—also l. 990; cp. besides 'Wars of Alexander,' ll. 255, 2878, 3613.

751. *In clay tylle I be clongyn colde.* Cp. 'Hymns to the Virgin,' (E. E. T. S. 1867), l. 85: *In coold clay now schal y clinge*; Böldeker's 'Altenglische Dichtungen des MS. Harl. 2253,' p. 211: *clingeþ so þe clai.*

764. *for crosse and Rode.* Cp. 'Athelston,' l. 169: *þanne swoor þe kyng be cros and roode.* The usual formula in our poem is *crosse on Rode.* So ll. 2576, 2880, 2928, 3112, 3452, 3882. This last is probably the

original form of the expression, in which case the word *crosse* would mean the horizontal cross-piece on the cross.

770. *Now haue good day, my lady fre.* This common formula of parting is illustrated by Hall in his note to 'King Horn,' ll. 727 f. For formulas of leave-taking in general see Kaluza to 'Libeaus Desconus,' l. 1051, and Kölbing to 'Ipomedon,' l. 298.

782. *Vp he worthis vppon his stede.* Cp. 'Sowdone of Babylone,' l. 1163: *Thai worthed vp on here stedes*; 'Ipomedon,' B, l. 1489: *Anon he worthyd vppon his stede*. 'Torrent of Portyngale,' ll. 627 f.:

*On he dyd hys harnes ageyme
And worthe on hys sted, serteyne.*

For expressions for mounting in general in Middle English see Zupitza, 'Athelston,' l. 381.

933. For the apparent inconsistency in the narrative here see Introduction under the head of Source, pp. xvii f.

983. *By-gynne wille auntres or aught yare.* *yare* here is the adverb = quickly as in 'King Horn,' ll. 468 f.:

*& tolde him ful yare
Hu he hadde ifare.*

991. *bayne* here of course does not mean "both," as Seyferth (p. 36) assumes, but "readily"—i. e. it is derived from O.N. *beinn*, not O.E. *bēgen*.

1017. *Thinke ye not on this endris day.* Cp. l. 1105. See *ender* in 'N. E. D.' "Only in phrase, This ender day, night, year, indicating a day, etc., recently past." Cp. also the examples there given. 'Confessio Amantis,' v. 7400 f.:

*This ender day as I gan fare
To hunte unto the grete hert.*

'Thomas of Erceldoune,' l. 25 (Thornton MS.):

*I me went pis Endres daye
ffast on my way makyng my mone.*

'Guy of Warwick,' ll. 2827 f.:

*He slewe my lordys sone þe emperoure
Thys endurs day in a stowre.*

'Sir Lambewell,' l. 282: *I shall die this yenders night.* 'Ipomedon,' B, ll. 849 f.:

*"I am" he sayd "þe strange squyere
That servyd my lady þis endris yere."*

1019. *Stode togedir in youre play.* As J. Hall has remarked ('K. Horn,' l. 32), the verb *to play* means usually to ride out by wood or water. The meaning of the noun often corresponds to this, but not in the present instance.

1063. Notice the concessive force of the infinitive clause here. Cp. note to l. 36.

1083. *Alle churlysshe maners he had in wone.* The word *wone* here means 'abundance.' Cp. 'Legend of Good Women,' ll. 1651 f.:

*Now hath Iasoun the flees and home is went
With Medea and tresor ful gret won.*

'Piers Plowman,' C. xxiii, 171: *And gaf hym gold, good won.* 'Golagros and Gawane,' ll. 36 f.:

*And all thair vittalis war gone
That thay weildit in wone.*

'Richard Coer de Lion,' l. 5125 : *Off tresore they hadde so mekyl wonne.*

'Horn Childe,' ll. 778 f. :

*Per Horn seize þe mest þrang
In he rides hem amang
ð lays on wel gode won.*

'Seuyn Sages,' ll. 2817 ff. :

*The emperoure and his men ilkane
Of the Sarezins slogh gode wane.*

For other examples see Kittredge, 'Authorship of Romaunt of Rose,' p. 37. For the derivation of this word from Icelandic *ván* see Zupitza's note to 'Guy of Warwick,' l. 10329.

1093. *And was of blyse I-broughte Alle bare.* Cp. 'Libeaus Desconus,' l. 2088 : *Of bliss he was all bare.* 'Amis and Amiloun,' l. 2338 : *For me of blis þou art al bare.* 'Ipomedon,' A, l. 2204 : *Off blis I were full bare.* Cp. also 'Seuyn Sages,' 1788 ; 'Ferumbras,' 225 ; 'Sege of Melayne,' 198.

1134 f. *I sayde that hys bydyng bayne the dukys daughter of Ascolote was.* Cp. Horstmann's 'Nordenglische Legendensammlung, St. Andrew,' l. 117 : *To do his bidding war þai bayne.* 'Turke and Gowin' (Percy Folio, i, 94) : *I will be att thy bidding baine* ; 'John de Reeve,' l. 504 (Percy Folio, ii, 578) : *att your bidding wee will be baine* ; 'York Plays,' xx, 284 : *And to þer bidding baynely bowe.* The spelling with one *d* is frequent in the York and Towneley Plays. Cp. 'Towneley Plays,' xx, 616 : *and bow to thi bydyng as bachlers shold.* So also xxii, 1.

1141. *dede is that white as swanne.* The phrase is used of the male sex as well. Cp. 'Seuyn Sages,' ll. 77 f. :

*The thrid maister was litel man,
Fair of chere and white as swan.*

'Octavian' (South English version), ll. 553 ff. :

*A tygre þey seye þer yn her dan,
And a manchild whyt as swan
Sok of her as of a woman.*

Examples of similar phrases are the following : 'Sir Triamore,' l. 649 : *shee was as white as lilye flower* (see also 'Le Morte Arthur,' 2994). 'Sir Degree,' ll. 15 f. :

*The King had no more Children but one,
a daughter white as whales bone.*

✓ - For a very full enumeration of such comparisons in the romances, see Hall's note to 'King Horn,' l. 15.

1144. *The quene was as wrothe as wynde.* For examples of this formula, cp. 'Piers Plowman,' C. iv, 486 : *As wroth as the wynd wez Mede thereafter*, and so again 'Richard the Redeless,' iii, 153. 'Patience,' l. 410 : *He wez as wroth as þe wynde towarde oure lorde.* Other examples are 'Sir Gawain and the Green Knight,' l. 318 ; 'Golagros and Gawane,' l. 770 ; 'Coventry Mysteries' (Prologue), p. 8. As will be observed, the formula was not Langland's property, as M. Jusseland seems to think ('L'Épopée mystique de William Langland,' p. 185).

1380. *Madame, how may thou to us take.* Here *take to* = *betake oneself to, consult*. Cp. 'Piers Plowman,' C. vii, 154 :

*And yf ich telle eny tales, thei taken hem to-geders
And don me faste Fridaies to bred and to water,*

where, however, the verb is reflexive.

1412. *yuelle haue I be-sette the dede.* Cp. 'Sir Triamore,' ll. 339 f. :

*Then waxed he wrath, I weene,
ð held his Iourney euill besett.*

'Octavian' (Northern version, Lincoln MS.), ll. 870 ff.:

*Now thynke me righte in my mode
That pou have wele bysett our gude.*

1537. *here hertys worde* = the words they had spoken privily together.

1557. *hys visere ouer hys yzen falle*. N. b. *falle* here is the preterite.

1576 f. *Also blythe As foule of day after the nyght*. Cp. 'Sir Degree,' ll. 802 ff.:

*& shee was glad to see that sight
as euer the bird was of daylight.*

'Octavian' (Northern version, Lincoln MS.), ll. 490 ff.:

*Als blythe were þay þane of þat syghte
Als es þe foules, whene it es lighte,
Of þe dayes gleme.*

'Beues of Hamtoun,' ll. 148 ff.:

*Gladder icham for þat sarwe
þan þe fouel, whan hit ginneth dawe.*

'Horn Childe,' ll. 754 ff.:

*& þan was Horn as fain o sizt
As is þe foule of þe lizt,
When it ginneth dawe.*

Cp. also 'Genesis,' l. 16. Other examples are given by Kölbing, 'Beues of Hamtoun,' l. 148.

1644. *Thoughe syr mador myght not go ne Ryde*. Cp. 'Seuyn Sages,' ll. 3535 ff.:

*Nay, sertes, it sal noght be swa,
Whils that I may ride and ga.*

'Seege of Troye,' ll. 1223 f.:

*Shuld y, wheder I may go or ryde,
Se my fader swyche shame betyde?*

For other examples see Kittredge, 'Authorship of the English Romaunt of the Rose,' p. 17 (Boston, 1892).

1893. *the* = *they*. For this spelling of *they* cp. 'Destruction of Troy,' l. 4361: *And þe sun the saidon sothely a god*. 'Sir Iohn Butler' (Percy Folio MS.), l. 37: *thé sought that hall then vp and doun*. 'Young Cloudeslie,' Percy Folio MS., l. 399: "*bring her, for gods loue*" *said the all*. The spelling is particularly common in Bishop Percy's Folio MS., but is found throughout Middle English. More surprising perhaps is the spelling *they* for the definite article *the*. This likewise is frequent in the Percy MS. Cp. 'Sir Degree,' ll. 105 f.:

*yett peradventure they time may come
that I may speake with my owne sonne.*

So ll. 25, 119. 'Eger and Grine,' l. 37: *they Ladye granted her good will*. 'Sir Triamore,' ll. 502 ff.:

*when they Lords were sett at meate, soone
the grayhound into the hall runn
amonge the knights gay.*

Cp. also Louelich's 'Holy Grail,' chap. 35, l. 423 et passim.

1904. *Mordreit than toke A way full gayne*. Cp. 'William of Palerne,' l. 4189, *þe geynest gatis*. 'Rauf Coilgear,' l. 201, *Quhair gangis thow, gedling, thir gaitis sa gane?* Lidgate, 'Thebes,' l. 2148: *At a posterne forth they gonne to ride By a gein pap*. Much commoner is the phrase *at þe gaynest* = *by the shortest road possible*. 'Morte Arthure' (Lincoln MS.), l. 3114: *To þe cete vnsene thay soghte at þe gayneste*. 'Sir Gawayne and

the Green Knight,' l. 1973: *f[e]rk purȝ þe fryth & fare at þe gaynest*. For the parallel expressions, *take the ready way*, etc., see Zupitza, 'Guy of Warwick,' l. 10078, and Kölbing's 'Ipomedon,' l. 8731.

1957. *Be he had made a lytelle Rese*. *Be* as a conjunction = *by the time that*, is not recorded in Mätzner's 'Altenglisches Wörterbuch,' Strammann-Bradley, or the 'N. E. D.' The above, however, is an evident example. Cp. also 'Sir Eglamour,' ll. 682 ff.:

*Be xij wekys were comyn and gone,
Crystyabelle as whyte as fome,
Alle pale was hur heve.*

'Towneley Plays,' xxi, 13 f.:

*Bot at last shaft we be out of hart langing,
Be thou haue had two or three hetys worth a hanging.*

'Destruction of Troy,' l. 814: *By the renke hade hym restid rydes the sun*. 'Merline' (Percy Folio), ll. 2132 ff.: *& by they had rydden a stonde . . . he mett with Merlyn on the playne*. 'Wars of Alexander,' l. 3900: *Be þai had fyneschid þis fyt, was ferre in with ewyn*. So also ll. 4437, 5163. For examples of *be þat* in the same sense cp. 'Lay le Freine,' l. 232. 'Octavian' (Northern version, Cambridge MS.), l. 1639.

1979. *Gaheriet hys brother is dede hym fro*. Similarly in 'York Plays,' xxxviii, ll. 189 ff.:

*My sorowe is all for þat sight
Þat I gune see,
Howe Criste my maistir, moste of myght,
Is dede fro me.*

Cp. likewise, 'York Plays,' vi, 6: *Þe joie of heuen þat thaym was lent is lost thaym froo*. Also in this romance, l. 654.

1992. *Gaheriet eyles noght but goode*. Cp. 'Triamour,' A, l. 909: *Me eylyth nothyng but gode*. 'Guy of Warwick,' B, 6184: *Tyrrye schall eyle nopyng but gode*. For other examples see Kölbing's note to 'Ipomedon,' 1215.

2104. *Rayses spere and gounfanoun*. Phrase often used to denote the beginning of an expedition or battle. Cp. ll. 2153, 2527. For *gounfanoun* cp. 'N. E. D.' "In the middle ages chiefly applied to the small flag or pennon suspended immediately beneath the steel head of a knight's lance"—also such examples as 'Sir Tristrem,' l. 173: *He bad his kniztes . . . Com Wiþ hors and wepenes fele And rered goinfaynoun*. 'Horn Childe,' ll. 65 f.:

*Alle were þai redi to fyt
and rered gonfeynoun.*

'Romaunt of the Rose,' l. 2018:

*I bere of Love the gonfanoun,
Of curtesye the banere.*

2108. *that Ryche towne*. Cp. 'Guy of Warwick,' B, l. 8317: *To Alys-awndur he went, þe ryche towne*. For many examples of *riche cite*, etc. see Kölbing, 'Ipomedon,' l. 2031.

2133. *As we ne durste no man nyghe nere*. 'Sir Ferumbras,' l. 350, *þe knyzt him nezedde þanne neer & spak til him þat tide*. 'Rowlande and Ottuell,' ll. 283 ff.:

*Lete Duke Naymes lenge at hame
To kȝpe pareche walles fro schame
þat no gledes neghe þam nere.*

'York Plays,' v, 36 ff.:

*For oure Lord god forbeedis vs itt,
The frute þer of, Adam nor I,
to neghe it nere.*

'York Plays,' iii, 370: *Yei, water nyghys so nere that I sit not dry.*

2256. *Tylle ynglande he, the message, Come.* Here *message* = *messenger*. Cp. Chaucer's 'Tale of Melibee,' § 71: *And therfore I conseilte that ye sende your messages, swiche as been discrete and wyse, unto your adversaries.* 'Troilus and Cryseyde,' ii, 936 f.: *Two or three of his messages yeden For Pandarus.*

2300. *Wemen Ar frele of hyr entayle.* *Entayle* meant originally *cut, form, and then quality*. So 'Richard Coer de Lion,' l. 5669: *An helme he hadde off ryche entayle.* 'Confessio Amantis,' i, 1087 ff.:

*An Hors of Bras thei let do forge
That in this world was nevere man
That such an other werk began.*

In the present passage the word means *nature, disposition*. Cp. 'Confessio Amantis,' i, ll. 1252 ff.:

*Forthi, my Sone, of such entaile
If that thin herte be disposed,
Tell out and let it noght be glosed.*

2338. *thar* here is impersonal. Cp. 'Wars of Alexander,' ll. 5377 ff.:

*Pe thare bot graunt me to geue quat guds as I craue
And I salt prestly þat prince present into þi handis.*

So also 'Destruction of Troy,' l. 2080.

2369. *Ichone A braunche of olyffe in hande.* For the olive branch as a sign of peace cp. 'Kyng Alisaunder,' ll. 1700 ff.:

*Theose comen, hond by hond,
Tofore Alisaundre in Tirelond,
And eche with a braunche of olyve
That was tokenyng of pes and lyue.*

'Sege of Melayne,' ll. 1213 ff.:

*Pe Messangere bare a wande
Of ane Olefe in his hande
In takynnyng he come of pece.*

'Generydes,' ll. 3144 ff.:

*Anon these lordes went on ther message,
Eche man A braunche of Olyve in his hande
In token of pece for ther viage.*

'Octavian' (Northern version, Lincoln MS.), ll. 1173 ff.:

*For þat was þat tym messangere laue
A braunche of olyue for to schewe
And it in hand to bere;
For the ordynaunce was so,
Messengerys schulde sauely come and go,
And no man do them dere.*

2457. *Gremly teres lette they glyde.* Cp. l. 1512, 2083, 2457. For *glyde* in the sense of *fall* see 'Kynge Robert of Cysille,' ll. 384 f.:

*And thorow that worde y felle in pryde,
As the aungelle that can of hevyn glyde (= Lucifer).*

'Sir Perceval of Galles,' ll. 2115 f.:

*Righte there appone the faire molde
The ryng owte glade.*

For other curious expressions for weeping cp. l. 1544: *The terys ranne on the kyngis kne.* 'Destruction of Troy,' l. 865: *Sho brast out bright water at hir brode een;* *ibid.* ll. 1286:

*Pité of þat pert knight persit his hert
Þat the shire water shot ouer his shene chekys.*

Also *ibid.* l. 3300. The expression above in l. 2457 does not appear among the expressions for weeping given by Zupitza, 'Athelston,' l. 275, and Breul, 'Sir Gowther,' l. 228.

2537. N. b. the omission of the subject. Similarly in l. 3598. Cp. also 'Seege of Troy,' ll. 1469 ff.:

*Now shull ye here of Achilles :
Whenne of bed arysyn was
Toward the batayle he came rydyng.*

'Beues of Hamtoun,' ll. 829 f.:

*Panne a sette horn to moupe
And blew þe pris ase wel koupe.*

'Sir Ferumbras,' l. 222:

By-þenk þe how þy blod ys schad & hast a grislich wounde.

Cp. P. de Reul's 'Language of Caxton's Reynard the Fox' (Ghent, 1901), pp. 30 f. for instances of the same thing. For omission of the subject in Old English see A. Pogatscher, 'Anglia,' xxiii, 261 ff.

2575. *That longe wyll not droupe And dare.* Cp. L. Minot's 'Poems,' i, 9:
*In þis dale I droupe and dare
For dern dedes þat done me dere.*

So 'Awntyrs of Arthure' (Ireland MS.), l. 52: *Thay droupun and daren.* See also 'Morte Arthure' (Lincoln MS.), l. 4007, and 'Seege of Troy,' l. 1413. The word *dare* here, which means "to tremble with fear," is of obscure origin, and of course not identical with the common verb of that form. According to the 'N. E. D.' it does not appear in the documents until about 1200. It is still in dialect use, not only in North Britain but in the Midland and South and South-western districts. Cp. Wright's 'English Dialect Dictionary.'

2592. Such spellings as *wlle* (= *wolle*) are particularly common in Robert of Brunne's 'Handlyng Synne,' e.g. *wordys* (= *wordys*), l. 545: *wolde* (= *wolde*), l. 693, *wrlde* (= *world*), l. 829, *wont* (= *wont*), l. 914.

2750. *Owte he Rode A grete Randonne.* Cp. 'Sowdone of Babylone,' ll. 200 f.:
*Forth than rode þat faire Ooste
With right goode chere and randon.*

'Beues of Hamtoun,' ll. 4499:

*He armede him in yrene wede
And lep vpon a sterne stede
And rod forth wip gret randoun.*

'Libeaus Desconus,' 338 f.:

*Togeder þey gonne ride
Wip well greet raundoun.*

'Sir Degree,' l. 445: *They rode together then with great randome.* 'Kyng Alisaunder,' ll. 2483 ff.:

*Kyng and dryk, eorl and baroun,
Prikid the stedis with gret raundoun.*

'Sir Ferumbras,' l. 890:

*þan cam til him a sarsyn prout
prikyng wip rendoun.*

Also 'Richard Coer de Lion,' l. 4815.

2751. *Gurwyn kynd he corde of werre.* So l. 2892. Cp. 'Seege of Troye,' ll. 1045 f.:

*Dynodennides was here name,
Alwehe she coued of gle and game.*

'York Plays,' xxxi, l. 148: *Nay, my lorde, he can of no bourdyng.*
'Libeaus Desconus,' ll. 1513 ff.:

*For þis fair lady
Coupe more of sorcery
þen oþer swiche five.*

'Ipomedon,' A, l. 319: *The burgays couth of curtesye.* 'Sir Degree,' l. 681: *Sir Degree cold of curtesye.* 'Ipomedon,' B, l. 792: *All men konne not of justynge.*

3166. *And syr mordred can to the contre.* *can* = *gan*, and the verb of going is omitted after the auxiliary as frequently in Modern German.

3172. Seyferth (pp. 18 f.) suggests here the substitution of **cled* "anstatt des sinnlosen *gledde*." The alliteration, however, evidently demands a form with *g*, so I have adopted the view of the 'N. E. D.' (see *gled*) that we have here a variant form of *cled*. Dr. Furnivall's gloss to this word, viz. *burning, glowing*, is certainly not correct.

3339. *Ryght so they trotted vpon þe grounde.* For *trot* in the general sense of *advance* cp. 'Wars of Alexander,' l. 2610: *Trottis him on to Tigre & þare his tentis settis.* Cp. also *ibid.* l. 2988.

3407. *Off bote they saw no better beld.* Cp. 'Sir Tristrem,' l. 1323: *Of bot sche was him beld.* 'Bone Florence of Rome,' ll. 1718 f.:

*But as a woman dyscownfortyd sare
Wythowten bote or belde.*

3422 f.:
*To the kynge spake he fult stytt,
Rewffully as he myght than Rowne.*

Cp. 'Octavian' (Southern version), ll. 939 ff.:

*Ech day he sente to toune
þat fowle þyng to aske batayle with rufull rounne
Ayens þe kyng.*

3498. *helpe me sone that I ware there.* Cp. 'Holy Grail,' ch. 55, ll. 347 f.:

*but helpeth me hens Owte Anon
that Owte Of this Chambre I were gon.*

'Generydes,' l. 3784: *helpe that I were Armyd anon.* 'Eger and Grine,' ll. 234 f.:

*helpe that I were sounded with one sleepe
& some Easment for me and my hackney.*

'Libeaus Desconus,' ll. 660 f.:

*Helpe Libeaus Desconus
þat he wer nouȝt y-schent.*

'Sir Triamore,' ll. 443 f.:

*helpe me, Sir, out of this Mischeefe!
att some towne that I were.*

'Beues of Hamtoun,' l. 1627: *And help þat þis þef wer ded.* The same construction occurs with that omitted. 'Sir Ferumbras,' l. 217:

*Do þat myn armes sone be heer
& help me y were a-rayde.*

We have a curious extension of this construction in instances like the following. 'Beues of Hamtoun,' ll. 1080:

*Iosian, þe faire maide,
Vn-arme Beues, he wer at mete
And serue þe self him þer ate.*

3613. *loke ye Rappe yow not vp to Ryde.* Cp. 'Cursor Mundi,' l. 25439: [R]ape þe lauerd nu forto ren. 'Piers Plowman,' C. ii, 90 f.: *Kynges and knyȝtes shoulde . . . Ryden and rappe adorne in reames aboute.* 'Destruction of Troy,' l. 818: *And now rapis hym to ryse & rom from his bede.* 'Rowlande and Ottuell,' l. 255:

Nay, sir, we wiȝt our batells guy

And rape vs for to ryde

Agayne þe Emperour, sir Garcy.

3733. *To cover the queene of hyr care.* Cp. 'Sir Ysumbras,' ll. 487 ff.:

þe kyng sware

When he were couerde of his care

That he wolde dubbe hym knyghte.

'Athelston,' ll. 331 f.:

God may couere hem off here care

Or þat I slepe a wynke.

'Morte Arthure' (Lincoln MS.), l. 859: *The care of þat creatoure couer sall I neuer.* 'Erl of Tolous,' ll. 382 ff.: *Myght y oght get of that free . . . Hyt wold covyr me of care.* Horstmann's 'Nordenglische Legensammlung, St. Nicholas,' l. 137: *And out of care so covered he.* Cp. also 'Athelston,' l. 41; 'Octavian' (Northern version, Lincoln MS.), l. 525.

3757. *And ofte he changyd hyde and hewe.* 'Squyr of Lowe Degre,' ll. 387 f.:

I woulde not for my crowne so newe

That lady chaunge hyde or hewe.

'Death and Liffe,' ll. 157 f.:

*& shee the ffoulest ffreake that formed was euer
both of hide & hew.*

'Richard Coer de Lion,' ll. 675 f.:

He was Ynglysch and wel trew

Be speche and syghte, hyde and hew.

'Eger and Grine,' l. 263: *The Ladye fayre of Hew & hyde.* 'Destruction of Troy,' ll. 3908 f.:

Do freikes were fourmet of feturs [a]like

Bothe of hyde & of hew to hede of a mykell.

'York Plays,' viii, 22: *And fordone hoyty, hyde and hewe.* 'Rowlande and Ottuell,' l. 1230: *Full fayre of hewe & hyde.*

3764. *And welcomyd launcelot as the hend.* 'St. Edmund the Confessor,' l. 102: *þis holi child ne wornde hire nozt ac dude as þe hende;* 'Emare,' l. 84: *He welcomed hym as þe hende;* 'Sir Eglamour of Artois,' l. 124: *Aftur mete do ye as hynde;* 'Kyng Alysander,' l. 6324: *Ther [he] dude noght as the wise!*

3832. *So lytett they wexe of lyn And lerys.* Cp. 'Eger and Grine,' ll. 597 ff.:

for there is neither Lin nor light

that Egeking my sword meeteth with

but gladlye it will through itt gone.

'Golagros and Gawane,' ll. 81 f.:

Schir Kay ruschit to the roist and reft fra the swane,

Lightly clought, throu lust, the lym fra the lyre.

Similarly 'Hali Meidenhad,' p. 21: *Se ferliche ha driuen dun to þe eorthe, þat al ham is to-limet, lið ba & lire.* 'St. Juliana,' p. 59: *As þat istelete irn to-limede hire & to-leac lið ba & lire.* As Mätzner ('Altenglisches Wörterbuch') remarks, this *lire* (*lyre*) = Ags. *lira*, meaning *flesh, muscle*, was easily confounded with *lire* (*lere*) = Ags. *hléor*, meaning *cheek, face*. Cp. also Amours' note to the above passage from 'Golagros and Gawane.'

3940. *Vnto Ihesu cryste Aske I A boone.* By analogy to the expression "make a boon." Cp. 'Sir Eglamour of Artois,' l. 101: *To Ihesu Cryste he made a boone.*

EDITIONS OF MIDDLE ENGLISH TEXTS

REFERRED TO IN THE NOTES.

- Altenglische Dichtungen des MS. Harl. 2253, herausgegeben von K. Bøddeker. Berlin, 1878.
- Altenglische Legenden, Neue Folge, herausgegeben von Carl Horstmann. Heilbronn und Leipsic, 1878-81.
- Amis and Amiloun, herausgegeben von E. Kölbing. Heilbronn, 1884 ('Altenglische Bibliothek').
- Arthour and Merlin, herausgegeben von E. Kölbing. Leipsic, 1890 ('Altenglische Bibliothek').
- Athelston, herausgegeben von J. Zupitza, 'Englische Studien,' vol. xiii.
- Awntyrs of Arthure at the Tarnewathelan, in 'Scottish Alliterative Poems,' ed. F. J. Amours (Scottish Text Society). Edinburgh, 1897.
- Babees Book, ed. F. J. Furnivall. London, 1868 (E. E. T. S.).
- Beues of Hamtoun (The Romance of Sir), ed. E. Kölbing. London, 1885-94 (E. E. T. S.).
- Blanchardyn and Eglantine (Caxton's), ed. L. Kellner. London, 1890 (E. E. T. S.).
- Bone Florence of Rome (Le), herausgegeben von Wilhelm Vietor, 1893.
- Bruce (The), by John Barbour, ed. W. W. Skeat. London, 1870 *et seq.* (E. E. T. S.).
- Cleanness, ed. Richard Morris, in 'Early English Alliterative Poems.' London, 1864 (E. E. T. S.).
- Confessio Amantis. Complete Works of John Gower, ed. G. C. Macaulay. Oxford, 1899 *et seq.*, vols. ii. and iii.
- Coventry Plays (published under the name of Ludus Coventriae), ed. J. O. Halliwell. London, 1841, Shakespeare Society.
- Cursor Mundi, ed. Richard Morris. London, 1874 *et seq.* (E. E. T. S.).
- Death and Lyffe, in Bishop Percy's Folio MS., ed. J. W. Hales and F. J. Furnivall. London, 1868, vol. iii.
- Degree (Sir), in Percy's Folio MS., ed. Hales and Furnivall, vol. iii.
- Destruction of Troy, ed. Panton and Donaldson. London, 1869 (E. E. T. S.).
- Eger and Grine, in Percy's Folio MS., ed. Hales and Furnivall, vol. i.
- Eglamour of Artois (Sir), in 'The Thornton Romances,' ed. J. O. Halliwell for the Camden Society. London, 1844.
- Emare, edited by A. B. Gough, London, 1901 (Morsbach and Holthausen's 'Old and Middle English Texts').
- Erl of Toulous, herausgegeben von G. Lüdtkke. Berlin, 1881.
- Ferumbras (Sir), ed. S. J. Herbage. London, 1879 (E. E. T. S.).
- Floris und Blancheflur, herausgegeben von E. Hausknecht. Berlin, 1885.
- Foure Sonnes of Aymon, ed. O. Richardson. London, 1885 (E. E. T. S.).
- Gawayne and the Green Knight (Sir), ed. Richard Morris. London, 1864 (E. E. T. S.).
- Gawene and the Carle of Carelyle (Sir), in 'Syr Gawayne,' ed. Sir F. Madden, 1839 (Bannatyne Club).
- Generydes, ed. W. A. Wright. London, 1879 (E. E. T. S.).
- Golagros and Gawane, in 'Scottish Alliterative Poems,' ed. F. J. Amours (Scottish Text Society). Edinburgh, 1897.

- Gowther (Sir), herausgegeben von K. Breul. Oppeln, 1886.
 Guy of Warwick (The Romance of), ed. J. Zupitza. London, 1875-76 (E. E. T. S.).
 Handlyng Synne, Part I., ed. F. J. Furnivall. London, 1903 (E. E. T. S.).
 Havelok (The Lay of), ed. W. W. Skeat. Oxford, 1902.
 Holy Grail, by H. Louelich, ed. F. J. Furnivall. London, 1874-78 (E. E. T. S.).
 Horn Childe, ed. J. Hall as Appendix to his edition of King Horn. Oxford, 1901.
 Ipomedon, herausgegeben von E. Kölbing. Breslau, 1889.
 King of Tars, herausgegeben von F. Krause, 'Englische Studien,' vol. xi.
 Kyng Alisaunder in 'Metrical Romances,' ed. H. Weber, 1810, vol. i.
 Lambewell (Sir), in Percy's Folio MS., vol. i.
 Lay le Fraine, herausgegeben von H. Varnhagen. Anglia, vol. iii.
 Lazamon's Brut, ed. Sir F. Madden. London, 1847.
 Libeaus Desconus, herausgegeben von M. Kaluza. Leipsic, 1890 ('Altenglische Bibliothek').
 Merline, in Percy's Folio MS., vol. i.
 Morte Arthure (Lincoln MS.), ed. M. M. Banks. London, 1900.
 Morte Darthur, by Sir Thomas Malory, ed. H. O. Sommer. London, 1889-91.
 Octavian, herausgegeben von G. Sarrazin. Heilbronn, 1885 ('Altenglische Bibliothek').
 Patience, ed. Richard Morris in 'Early English Alliterative Poems.' London, 1864 (E. E. T. S.).
 Pearl, ed. I. Gollancz. London, 1891.
 Perceval of Galles (Sir), in 'The Thornton Romances,' ed. J. O. Halliwell. London, 1844.
 Piers Plowman (The Vision of William concerning), ed. W. W. Skeat. Oxford, 1886.
 Rauf Coilyear (Taill of), herausgegeben von M. Tonndorf, 1894.
 Richard Coer de Lion, in 'Metrical Romances,' ed. H. Weber. Edinburgh, 1810, vol. ii.
 Roberd of Cisyle, herausgegeben von R. Nuck. Berlin, 1887.
 Romans of Partenay, ed. W. W. Skeat. London, 1866 (E. E. T. S.).
 Romaunt of the Rose, in 'The Complete Works of Geoffrey Chaucer,' ed. W. W. Skeat. Oxford, 1894-97, vol. i.
 Rowlande and Ottuell (Romance of Duke), ed. S. J. Herrtage. London, 1880 (E. E. T. S.).
 Seege of Troye, ed. C. H. A. Wager. Boston, 1899.
 Sege of Melayne, ed. S. J. Herrtage. London, 1880 (E. E. T. S.).
 -Seuyn Sages, in 'Metrical Romances,' ed. H. Weber, vol. iii.
 Sowdone of Babylone, ed. E. Hausknecht. London, 1881 (E. E. T. S.).
 Squyr of Lowe Degree, in 'Remains of the Early Popular Poetry of England,' ed. W. C. Hazlitt. London, 1866, vol. ii.
 Torrent of Portyngale, ed. E. Adam. London, 1887 (E. E. T. S.).
 Towneley Plays, ed. G. England. London, 1897 (E. E. T. S.).
 -Triamore (Sir), in Percy's Folio MS., vol. ii.
 Tristrem (Sir), herausgegeben von E. Kölbing. Heilbronn, 1882.
 Wars of Alexander, ed. W. W. Skeat. London, 1886 (E. E. T. S.).
 William of Palerne, ed. W. W. Skeat. London, 1867 (E. E. T. S.).
 York Plays, ed. L. T. Smith. Oxford, 1885.
 Ysumbras (Sir), herausgegeben von J. Zupitza und G. Schleich. Berlin, 1901 (Palaestra, xv).
 Ywain and Gawain, herausgegeben von G. Schleich, Oppeln and Leipsic, 1887.

GLOSSARY.

- A, *adj.* all, 2462.
 A, *conj.* and, 2844.
 A, *conj.* if, 2832.
 ABBYTE, *s.* habit, robe, 3793.
 ABYDE, *v.* wait for, 162.
 ABYE, *subj.* 2 *s.* pay for, suffer for, 1387; *pret.* 3 *s.* ABOUGHT, 2523.
 ACORDEMENT, *s.* agreement, composition of differences, 1639.
 ACOUNTRES, *s. pl.* encounters, 1589.
 ADYGHTE, *p.p.* prepared, 1545.
 A-FROUGHTE, *p.p.* afraid, 2295, 2413.
 AGAYNE, *prep.* towards, to meet, 709; opposite to, before, 2648.
 AGILTE, *p.p.* sinned against, wronged, 915, 1322; *pret.* 3 *s.* AGULTE, 1154.
 ALBLASTERS, *s. pl.* cross-bows, 2729.
 ALL-MYGHTE, *adj.* almighty, 675.
 ALSO, *adv.* as, 1576.
 AND, *conj.* if, 161, 239, 1706, 2846, 3945.
 ANTOURE, 1829. See AUNT(E)RE.
 APARAYLEMENTE, *s.* dress, apparel, 2055.
 APPAR(E)AYLE, *s.* furnishings, 969; accomplishments in arms, 1748.
 ARE, *adv.* before, 291, 977.
 ARMYTES, *s. gen.* hermit's, 3950.
 AS, *conj.* as if, 220.
 ASCRYE, *v.* call upon, 2126.
 ASSENT(E), *s.* opinion (in common with others), 1722, 1937, 2604.
 AS-TYTE, *adv.* quickly, 488, 3713.
 AUAUNTEMENT, *s.* boast, 1617.
 AUGHT, *pret.* 1 *s.* owned, possessed, 653.
 AUNT(E)RE, *s.* adventure, fortune, 33, 362, 1903; *pl.* AUNTRES, 719, 983.
 AUNTUR(E)S, *s. pl.* 3, 6, 11, 19, 1906. See AUNT(E)RE.
 AWAYTES, *pres.* 3 *s.* watches, 64.
 AWISE, *imperat.* 2 *s.* (*reflexive*), bethink oneself, reflect, 2568.
 AYTHUR, *indef. pron.* either, each, 3278.
 BALE, *s.* sorrow, 628, 1074.
 BARE, *s.* boar, 229, 951.
 BATAYLES, *s. pl.* battalions, divisions, 3306.
 BAYNE, *adj.* straight, ready, obedient, 991, 1134, 3217, 3315.
 BE, *conj.* by the time that, when, 1861, 1957.
 BE(E), *s.* ring, 3179, 3419.
 BE-CRYED, *p.p.* accused, 2774.
 BEDE, *v.* offer, 849, 1462, 3356; proclaim, 32, 41, 348; *pres.* 1 *pl.* 3274.
 BEDENE, BYDENE, *adv.* together, 24, 70, 546, 723, 1513, 1663, 1760, 2278; well, completely, 1684, 1728.
 BEGHE, *s.* ring, 2625. See BE(E).
 BEGREDEDE, *pret.* 3 *pl.* accused, 1812.
 BELD, *s.* comfort, 3407.
 BELEUE, BELEVE, *v.* remain, 759, 3963; leave, 558; *pret.* 3 *s.* BELEFTE, BY-LEFTE, 60, 1765.
 BEMYS, *s. pl.* trumpets, 2707.
 BENE, *v.* be, 1503.
 BENTE, *s.* field (of battle), 3359, 3374.
 BENTE, *p.p.* stretched, 990.
 BERE, *s.* bray, sound, 2127.
 BERE, *pret.* 3 *s.* bore, 538.
 BESAUNT(E), *s.* a gold coin of Byzantian origin, 3179, 3419; *pl.* BESAVNTIS, 3542.
 BESETTE, BYSETTE, *p.p.* employed, applied, 1412, 1568.
 BETHE, *pres.* 3 *s.* (*in future sense*), will be, 1727; *pres.* 3 *pl.* are, 1825; *imper.* 2 *pl.* be, 1881.
 BETTE, *pret.* 3 *pl.* beat, 13.
 BLANNE. See BLYNNE.
 BLE(E), *s.* complexion, countenance, 739, 3504, 3779, 3876.
 BLOO, *adj.* blue, 151.
 BLYNDIS, *pres.* 3 *s.* becomes blind, 311.
 BLYNNE, *v.* decline, cease, stop, 37,

- 1691, 1824, 2999, 3039, 3727 ; *pret.* 3 s. **BLANNE**, 3364.
BLIVE, *adv.* quickly, 3706.
BODDYN, *p.p.* prayed, 2803.
BODE, *s.* inmessage, report, 3468.
BODE-WORDE, *s.* promise, 3274.
BOGHT, *p.p.* paid for, redeemed, requited, 470, 3009, 3483, 3718.
BOLD, *adj.* sure, 3009, 3483.
BOLDE, *adv.* surely (?), 3688.
BONE, *s.* limb, 117.
Bo(ONE), *s.* prayer, request, 2803, 3787, 3940.
BORD, *s.* table, 859.
BOTE, *s.* remedy, help, amends, 3303, 3407, 3486, 3840.
BOTHIS, *adj. gen.* both, 176.
BOUGHT. See **BOGHT**.
BOUNTE, *s.* valour, knightly qualities, 125, 1739.
BOWNE, *adj.* ready, prepared, 941, 2151, 2525, 2882, 3427, 3803.
BOWNE, *v.* make ready, 3257.
BRAST(E), *v.* break, burst, 3492 ; *pret.* 3 s. 188, 1343, 2178, 3077, 3135, 3774.
BRAYED, *pret.* 3 s. drew suddenly, 3344.
BRAUNDISSHID, *pret.* 3 s. flourished about, moved vigorously, 117.
BREME, *adj.* fierce, 229, 951, 1600, 2214, 2606, 3249.
BRENNE, *v.* burn, 2507 ; *pret.* 3 *pl.* **BRENTE**, 2537 ; *p.p.* **BRENT(E)**, 943, 1319, 1939, 3697.
BRERE, *s.* briar, wild rose, 179, 724, 835.
BROWGH, *s.* town, 2707.
BUSK(E), *v.* get ready, hasten, betake oneself, 349, 2505, 3427 ; *pres.* 3 s. **BUSKES**, -is, 547, 2525, 2715 ; *pret.* 3, **BUSKED**, -yd, 699, 2151, 2882, 3579, 3803 ; *p.p.* **BUSKYD**, 1808.
BUSKYD. See **BUSK(E)**.
BY, *v.* be, 34, 876 ; *pres. subj.* 3 s. 1759.
BY-CALLE, *v.* accuse, impeach, 1553.
BY-DENE. See **BEDENE**.
BYDYNG, *s.* bidding, 1134.
BYGGYD, *p.p.* built, 3619.
BYGGYNG, *s.* building, dwelling, 3767.
BY-HESTE, *s.* offer, 3296.
BY-KNOW, *v.* confess, 916.
BY-LEFTE. See **BELEUE**.
BY-MENE, *v.* mean, 856.
BYRD, *s.* bride, lady, 2989, 3632 ; **BY-SETTE**. See **BE-SETTE**.
BY-SPAKE, *pret.* 3 s. spoke to, 2404.
BY-TAKE, *v.* deliver, hand over to, 2283 ; *pres.* 3 *pl.* 2346.
CASTE, *pret.* 3 s. looked, 3776.
CHASE. See **CHESE**.
CHERE, *s.* countenance, manner, 477, 540, 781.
CHESE, *v.* choose, 2973 ; *pret.* 3, **CHESE**, 419, 514, 2355, 2522, 3290 ; *pret.* 3, **CHASE**, 2957, 3561.
CLEPIS, *pres.* 3 s. calls, summons, 106, 387, 2540 ; *pret.* 3 s. **CLEPID**, **CLEPYD**, 1444, 2668, 3606, 3858.
CLONGYN, *p.p.* withered, shrunk up, 751.
CLOUGHIS, *s. gen.* ravines, 893.
CLYPPE, *v.* embrace, 3927 ; *pres.* 3 s. **CLYPPIS**, 1547 ; *pret.* 3 s. **CLYPPED**, 1801.
COLDE, *v.* grow cold, 3647.
COLOURE, *s.* hue, countenance, 2816.
COMSEMENT, *s.* commencement, 1726.
CORAGE, *s.* heart, 3777.
CORDEMENT, *s.* agreement, reconciliation, 2422, 2426.
CORSSE, 2880. See **CROSSE**.
CORTESLY, *adv.* courteously, 2283.
COUDE, **COVDE**, **COWDE**, *pret.* 3 s. knew, 3617, 3809 ; had knowledge, was skilled, 2750, 2892.
COUTH(E), *pret.* could, knew, 104, 223, 1446, 1675 ; *p.p.* known, 2248.
COVER, *v.* recover, heal, 3733 ; *pret.* 3 s. **COVERYD**, 2856, 3134, 3736.
CRYE, *s.* company (of contestants at a tournament), 44.
CRYE, *v.* proclaim, 342.
CRAFTELY, *adv.* skilfully, 390.
DALE, *v.* deal, 1076 ; *pret.* 3 *pl.* **DALTYN**, 2897 ; *p.p.* **DALTE**, finished, 3259.
DARE, *v.* crouch in fear, be afraid, 2575.
DEDE, *s.* death, 911.
DEDE, *s.* capacity, 493.
DEFFEND, *v.* exclude, 3049.
DEPARTE, *v.* part, 1805, 3704 ; *subj.* 3 s. divide, 3704 ; *p.p.* **DEPARTED**, come to an end, 743.
DERE, *s.* harm, 3704.
DERE, *v.* harm, 2896.
DERFE, *adj.* terrible, 2607.

- DESSE, *s.* dais, 2259.
 DEVOYEDE, *imperat.* 2 *s.* get out of, 1167.
 DEYNGE, *s.* dying, 1047.
 DIGHT *v.* (*intrans.*), get ready (especially of arming), 167, 1874; dress, 326; attend to, 717; *imperat.* 1 *pl.* 2134, 2 *s.* 2450; *p.p.* got ready, prepared, 142, 456, 573, 876, 1884, 1896; put, 847; disposed of, 1909; conditioned, 2000.
 DO, *v.* cause to, 1003; *pret.* 3 *s.* DID, DYD, 341, 1121, 2502; *p.p.* DONE, 370, 2328; *imperat.* 2 *pl.* DOTHE, put, 3883.
 DU(EL)E, *s.* sorrow, 682, 873.
 DOLWYN, *p.p.* buried, 3604.
 DOME, *s.* command, 2260; *pl.* DOMYS, 2482.
 DONE, *infin.* 1122. See Do.
 DORE, *v.* endure, 238.
 DRAKE, *s.* dragon, 2607.
 DRAYNE, *p.p.* drawn, 859, 1997, 2164, 3014, 3325.
 DRECHYD, *p.p.* disturbed, troubled, 1869.
 DREGHE, *adj.* great, 2621.
 DROUPE, *v.* sink down (from fear), 2575.
 DRYHE, in ON DRYHE, aside, apart, 2826.
 DUELLE, DWELLE, *s.* sorrow, mourning, 2244, 2458; pity, 1742, 1971, 2125.
 DUL(E)FULLY, *adv.* pitiably, 1406, 2000.
 DUOGHTY, *adj.* doughty, 24.
 DWELLE, *v.* stay, stop, 1769, 1790, 1793; *subj. pl.* 1776.
 DWELLE, *s.* See DUELLE.
 DWELLYNGE, *s.* staying, 80.
 DYGHET. See DIGHT.
 DYNT(E), *s.* blow, 484, 503, 2173, 2753, 2812; *pl.* DYNIS, 1076, 2801.
 DYSKERE, *v.* disclose, 1735.
 EDDER, *s.* adder, 3341.
 ELLIS, *adv.* else, 943.
 EME, *s.* uncle, 1681; *gen.* EME-IS, 2960.
 ENDRIS, *adj.* other, 1017.
 ENTAYLE, *s.* fashion, quality, character, 975, 2300; good form, 3273.
 ENTENTE, *s.* assiduous effort, endeavour, 3691.
 ENTERDITE, *v.* lay under an interdict, 2253; *p.p.* ENTERDIT, ENTYRDYTED, 2268, 2284.
 EUYN, *adv.* straight, 3616.
 EUYN, *s.* evening, 2236.
 EYNE, *s. pl.* eyes, 3265, 3435.
 FALLYS, *pres.* 3 *s.* befits, 1119; *pret.* 3 *s.* FELL, was suitable, 1122.
 FANTYSE, *s.* vain thing, 2547.
 FARE, *s.* matter, business, 945.
 FARE, *v.* go, journey, 156, 222, 249, 688.
 FASOWNE, *s.* fashion, kind, 2531.
 FASTE, *v.* make fast, confirm, 3324.
 FAYNE, *adj.* happy, 3200; eager, 3799.
 FEE, *s.* possessions, 2719.
 FELE, *adj.* many, 6, 2019, 2032, 2157.
 FELLY, *adv.* fiercely, cruelly, 3391.
 FER, *adv.* far, 2400.
 FERE, *adj.* sound, in good condition, 411, 552.
 FERE, *s.* company, 2222, 3402, 3702, 3900; *pl.* FERYS, companions, 3830.
 FERLY, *adv.* wonderfully, 6, 3176.
 FERRE, *adv.* far, 2982, 3019, 3167.
 FETTE, *p.p.* fetched, taken, 1067.
 FEYGHET, *s.* fight, 1489.
 FEYGHET(E), *v.* fight, 1318, 1397, 1436.
 FEWTRED, *pret.* 3 *pl.* put into "fewter," the felt-lined rest for the spear attached to the saddle, 3357.
 FLEME, *v.* reject, 2673; *pret.* 3 *s.* FLEMYD, banished, 3560; *p.p.* FLEMYD, banished, 3755.
 FOLDE, *s.* ground, 3549.
 FOLDE, *v.* bend, 99; yield, 2547; clasp, 3771.
 FOLE, *s.* fool, 2672.
 FOLYD, *p.p.* foolish, 402.
 FONDE, *pret.* 3 *pl.* advanced, 3337. See FOUND.
 FONE, *adj.* few, 2378.
 FONE, *pret.* 3 *s.* took, 1796.
 FONE, *s. pl.* foes, 3211.
 FONGE, *v.* receive, 3503.
 FORBARE, *pret.* 1 *s.* spared, 2836.
 FORBARE, *p.p.* miscreated creature? 3741.
 FORBEDE, 3 *pres. subj.* forbid, 3681.
 FORBLED, *p.p.* weakened by loss of blood, 3434.

- FORBRENDÉ, FORBRENT, p.p.** put to death by burning, 1666, 1925.
FORLORENE, p.p. lost, 3209.
FORNE, prep. for, 3211.
FORSETTE, pret. 3 s. set round with a guard, 3046.
FOR-THY, conj. therefore, 104, 1088, 1141, 2394, 2408; because, 1878.
FOR-THYNKE, v. rue, repent, 2737; *pres.* 3 s. **FOR-THYNKETH**, 3849.
FOR(E)WARD, s. offer, agreement, 3302; *pl.* **FORWARDYS**, 2673, 3270, 3324.
FOR-WERY, adj. very weary, tired out, 2901.
FOR-WONDRED, p.p. full of wonder, 2730.
FOR-WHY (THAT), conj. wherefore, 33, 2617; because, 97; on condition that, 389.
FORYELDE, 3 pres. subj. reward, 1548.
FO(U)NDE, FOWN(D)E, v. thrust, 2159; advance (*trans.*) 2551; advance (*intrans.*) 2553; go, 3513; strive, 3229; *imperat.* 2 *pl.* **FOUNDIS**, 2551.
FRE(E), adj. noble, open, generous, 75, 90, 242, 408, 454, 1009, 3643.
FRELE, adj. frail, 2300.
FRELY, adj. noble, 2939, 3121, 3329.
FRELY, adv. very, 3772.
FRESTE, adv. first, 1151.
FREYNED, pret. 3 s. asked, 678.
FRISTE, adj. first, 149; *adv.* 736.
FRO, prep. from, 633, 1979, 1987.
FYFTY, adj. fiftieth, 3895. Probably a mistake for FYFTE.
GAB, v. tell lies, 1147, 1156; *pret.* 1 s. **GABBYD**, 1105, 1132, 1136.
GAME, s. delight, mirth, 96, 430, 611; *pl.* **GAMYS**, 3227.
GATYS, s. gen. thus gatys = in this way, 1712.
GAYNE, adj. straight, 1904.
GERE, s. gear, things, 3736.
GESTE, s. guest, 453.
GILTE, p.p. wronged, 1377.
GLAD, v. be glad, 3227.
GLEDDE, p.p. clothed, dressed, 3172.
GLEDE, s. a live coal, fire, 780, 2742, 2793.
GLENTE, pret. 3 s. glinted forth, 3493.
GLEWE, s. jokes, 1164.
GLEYVES, s. pl. spears, 3078, 3096.
GLODE, pret. 3 s. glided, 3341.
GON(NE), pret. 3, began, 1390; did, 99, 139, 1031; *p.p.* done, 1780.
GOODE, adj. pl. good, brave men, 2157.
Go(U)NFANOUNE, GONFANOWNE, s. small flag or pennon attached to the lance just below the steel head, 2104, 2153, 2464, 2886, 3096.
GRANDE, pres. 1 s. grant, 2318.
GRAYTHES, pres. 3 *pl.* get ready, 2530; *pret.* 3 s. **GRAYTHID**, 2739.
GRE(E), s. prize, preëminence, 48, 2409.
GREDDE, pret. 3 s. drew, 1838.
GREDE, v. cry, 791, 1390; *pres.* 2 s. **GREDYS**, accusest, 1572.
GRETE, adj. great, 682.
GYNNE, s. device, stratagem, 3037.
3ARE, adj. ready, 2505, 2608; *s.* **YARE**.
3EME, v. take care of, 2512.
HALD, v. hold, consider, 2336, 2497; *pres.* 3 *pl.* 2925; *pres.* 3 s. **HALDYS**, 89.
HALE, s. hall, 1078.
HALSED, pret. 3 s. saluted, 2632.
HAN, HANNE, pres. 3 *pl.* have, 2417, 3209.
HELDE, v. incline, 184; yield, 261, 2141.
HELE, s. salvation, 3655.
HELE, v. conceal, 143, -466, 1678, 2967, 3840.
HEM, person. pron. them, 1464, 2123.
HEND(E), adj. gentle, courteous, 110, 330, 541, 623, 1529, 2469, 3764.
HENDE, adv. near, at hand, 332.
HENDELY, adv. courteously, gracefully, with good manners, 600, 1613, 2638, 2710, 3922.
HENTE, pret. 3 s. seized, laid hold of, took, 1037, 2853, 3491, 3934; *p.p.* **HENT**, 3023.
HERSE, s. a frame designed to carry the candles lighted in honour of the dead, 3532.
HEST(E), s. promise, vow, 2660, 2688, 2697, 3686.
HETTE, p.p. promised, 2697.
HIGHT(E), HYGHT(E), pres. 3 s. is called, 3960; *pret.* 3 s. was called,

- 93, 883, 1474 ; *p.p.* called, 2487 ; promised, 1447, 3252.
- HOLLY, *adv.* entirely, wholly, 935, 945, 2980.
- HOLTYS, *s. pl.* groves, 3029.
- HOLYCHE, *adv.* wholly, 3826.
- HOPE, *pres.* 1 *s.* think, 490, 1491, 2737, 3543 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* HOPYD, 2491, 3620.
- HORE, *adj.* grey (from lichen, perhaps), ancient, 314, 3029.
- HORSYD, *pret.* 3 *s.* mounted, 87.
- HOUYD, HOVID, *pret.* lingered, 259, 2622.
- HYE, *s.* haste, 2830.
- HYE, *imperat.* 2 *s.* haste, 3452.
- HYGHT, *s.* HIGHT.
- HYTTE, *pers. pron.* it, 3711, 3834.
- I-BENTE, *p.p.* adorned, 1035.
- ICHE, *indef. pron.* each, 1685, 2109, 2367, 2504, 3761.
- ICHONE, *indef. pron.* every one, 627, 2036, 2369.
- I-DIGHTE, *p.p.* got ready, 610.
- ILKE, YLKE, *adj.* same, 1765, 1886, 1907, 2092, 2166.
- I-MANASED, *p.p.* menaced, 479.
- I-MARYD, *pret.* 3 *s.* marred, 3360.
- INCHES(s)OUN, *s.* occasion, 56, 1030.
- I-RADE, *p.p.* read, 2651.
- I-WOUNDYD, *p.p.* wounded, 934.
- I-WYSSE, *adv.* surely, 3633, 3635, 3923.
- KENE, *adj.* bold, 803, 955, 1921, 1969, 3248.
- KENNE, *v.* know, recognize, 175 ; *p.p.* KENE, 1097.
- KEPETH, *pres.* 3 *s.* pays attention to, 3027 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* KEPIT, 102.
- KEST(E), *pret.* 3 *s.* uttered, 3510 ; *p.p.* fixed, 455.
- KITHE, 533. See KYTHE.
- KLEPIS, *pres.* 3 *s.* calls, summons, 816 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* KLEPITTE, 191, KLEPYD, 536.
- KNOWLACHE, *pres.* 1 *s.* acknowledge, 3638.
- KYNNES, *s. gen.* kind of, 3037.
- KYTHE, *v.* make known, display, declare, 1441, 1611, 1774, 2481, 2744, 3598 ; proclaim, 1785 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* KYD(DE), 2751, 2892.
- LAD(E), *pret.* 3 *s.* led, 712, 723 ; *p.p.* 1506.
- LAYNE, *s.* concealment, 602, 1964, 3204.
- LAYNE, *v.* conceal, 989, 1026, 1108, 2650, 3591.
- LAYNE, *pret.* 3 *pl.* lay, 2763.
- LECHE, *s.* leech, physician, 368, 380, 387 ; *pl.* LECHIS, 325, 331.
- LECHYNG, *s.* medical treatment, 3507.
- LEDE, *s.* man, 3163 ; land, 653, 2659.
- LEDE, *v.* live ? 3948.
- LEES, LES(E), *s.* falsehood, 276, 423, 992, 1719, 2255, 2353, 2959, 3565.
- LEFF, *adj.* dear, 1.
- LEFFE, *v.* live, 2499.
- LEFTE, *pret.* 3 *s.* remained, 53 ; *s.* LEUE.
- LELYEST, *adv.* most loyally, 1066.
- LEME (miswritten for LEUYN), *s.* light, 3586.
- LEM(M)AN, *s.* lover (male or female), 586, 605, 637, 1086, 1137, 1179.
- LEMYD, *pret.* shone, 1471, 3308, 3586.
- LEMYN (miswritten probably for LEUYN), *s.* bright flame, lightning, 3308.
- LEND(E), *v.* stay, tarry, 565, 617, 1007, 3276, 3768 ; *pres.* 1 *pl.* 2590 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* LENTE, 988 ; *p.p.* LENTE, 1353, 1945, 2277, 2727.
- LENDE, *v.* land, 2473.
- LENE, *v.* lend, grant, 1464.
- LENGE, *v.* stay, dwell, 3276, 3556.
- LENGER, *adv.* longer, 40, 162, 381, 565, 1484, 3802.
- LENTE, *v.* lend, 3693.
- LERE, *s.* learning, 521.
- LERE, *s.* cheek, countenance, 3624 ; for the *pl.*, 3832, *cp. note.*
- LERE, *v.* learn, 641.
- LESE. See LEES.
- LESE, *subj.* 3 *pres.* lose, 3415.
- LESYNG(E), *s.* falsehood, lying, 1004, 1043, 1098, 2728, 3550.
- LET(TE), LETT, *pret.* 3 *s.* caused (to be made), 41, 2978, 2985, 3028.
- LETTE, *v.* cease (*intrans.*), 201, 665 ; hinder, prevent, 205, 2441.
- LEUE, LEVE, *adj.* dear, 3204, 3412, 3495.
- LEUE, *v.* stay, 3203.
- LEUE, *imperat.* 2 *s.* permit, 3556.
- LEUYD, *pret.* 3 *s.* left, 2824 ; *p.p.* 2820, 3744.

- LEVANDE, *pres. part.* living, 2840.
 LEVYD, *p.p.* lived, 3601.
 LEYRE, *s.* countenance, 475. See
 LERE,
 LIGGYS, *pres.* 3 *s.* lies, 1730.
 LIGHT, *p.p.* settled, 581.
 LOGGEN, *pres.* 3 *pl.* lodge, arrange,
 1901.
 LOKYD, *p.p.* enclosed, lodged, 2620.
 LONE, *s.* concealment, 1124.
 LORE, *s.* learning, doctrine, 3966.
 LORREME, *s.* bridle-reins, 1471.
 LORNE, *p.p.* lost, 3551.
 LOUGHE, *adj.* flaming, full, 1594.
 LOUGHE, *pret.* laughed, 496, 1536,
 1636.
 LOVDE, *adj.* loud, 910.
 LYKYNGE, *s.* love, 3702.
 LYTHE, *v.* listen to, hear, 676, 1479,
 1582, 1643, 1772, 1787, 1942.
 LYVAND, 949. See LEVANDE.

 MAKE, *s.* match, 1062; mate, spouse,
 3668.
 MAY(E), *s.* maiden, 196, 1107.
 MAYNE, *s.* strength, 3797.
 MEKELLE, MEKYLL, *adj.* great,
 1424, 1528, 3816. See MYKELLE.
 MENE, *v.* complain, mourn, 727,
 3861.
 MENE, *v.* discourse, tell, indicate,
 22, 1686; remember, 3729; *pres.*
 1 *s.* 2420, 3959; *pret.* 3 *s.* 3932;
p.p. 3695.
 MERELY, *adv.* merrily, cheerfully,
 3856.
 MESE, *s.* course, 1512.
 MEYNE, *s.* company, 2039.
 MO, *adv.* more, 198, 648.
 MOCHE, MYCHE, *adj.* great, 1960,
 2219, 2850, 2923, 3082; *adv.*
 much, 96.
 MOCHELLE, *adj.* great, 1496.
 MODE, *s.* mind, 3679.
 MOLD(E), *s.* earth, ground, 707,
 3300, 3459, 3684; *pl.* MOLDYS,
 3545.
 MON, *pres.* 1 *s.* must, shall, 3230.
 MORROW, *s.* morning, 3366, 3810.
 MOSTE, *adj.* greatest, 3212.
 MOTTE, *pres.* 1 *s.* am permitted to,
 3207.
 MOW(E), *pres.* 1 *pl.* may, 1114, 1140.
 MYCHE. See MOCHE.
 MYCHELLE, MYKELLE, MYKYLL, *adj.*
 great, 1560, 1642, 1690, 1749,
 3313; *adv.* much, 1675, 1708,
 1783, 2042. See MEKELLE, MOCH-
 ELLE.
 MYNGYD, *pret.* 3 *s.* disturbed, con-
 fused, 3933.
 MYNNE, *v.* remind, 169.
 MYSSE, *s.* sin, 3677.

 NADE, *pret.* 1 *s.* had not, 1410.
 NE, *adv.* not, 76, 98, 566.
 NEDELYNGIS, *adv.* necessarily, 753.
 NERE, *pret. subj.* 3 *s.* were not, 411.
 NEUYN(E), NEVYN, NEWYN, *v.* name,
 tell, 2582, 3304, 3584, 3823, 3881;
pres. 1 *s.* 3409, 3965.
 NO, *adv.* not, 37.
 NOLD(E), *pret.* would not, 633, 701,
 1455, 2825, 3786.
 NOME, *pret.* 3 *s.* took, 2258, 2374.
 NONE, *adj.* no, 89.
 NOTE, *pres.* 1 *s.* know not, 3426.
 NYE(E), *v.* draw nigh to, 2832, 3183.
 NYLLE, *pres.* 3 *s.* will not, 823, 2077,
 3039; *pres.* 1 *pl.* 1457.
 NYSE, *adj.* foolish, 3010.
 NYSTE, *pret.* knew not, 616, 856.

 O, *numeral*, one, 1593, 1602.
 OBBYTE, *s.* habit, dress, 3763.
 OF, *adv.* off, 1850.
 OF-SHERE, *v.* cut off, 213.
 ONE, *adv.* alone, 315.
 ONYS, *adv.* once, 2699.
 ORE, *s.* mercy, 1344, 3484.
 OR(E), *adv.* before, 1740, 2202, 3717;
conj. 1535, 1917, 2856, 3134, 3953;
prep. 526, 3375.
 OSTE, *s.* host, 2043, 2102; *pl.* OSTES,
 2154, 2211, 2619.
 OUERESTE, *adv.* uppermost, 846.
 OUTHER, *indef. pron.* either, 2013.

 PALLE, *s.* a costly cloth, 2712.
 PARAYLLE, *s.* apparel, 2614.
 FIGHT, PYGHT, *p.p.* pitched, 2623,
 2644.
 PLAY(E), *s.* sport, amusement, 398,
 779, 1019.
 PLAY(E), *v.* amuse oneself, 445, 517,
 730, 815, 890.
 POMELLES, *s. pl.* apple-shaped orna-
 ments on top of tent-poles, 2625.
 PRASTE, 3326. See PRESTE.
 PRES, PRES, PRES(S)E, *s.* press, 518;

- throng, company, 417, 1713, 1859, 1955, 2351.
 PRESONS, *pres.* 2 *s.* imprisonnest, 1853.
 PRESTE, *adj.* ready, eager, 2716, 3151, 3827.
 PREVITE, *s.* private affairs, secret counsels, 657.
 PREWELY, *adv.* privately, 1767.
 PRYDE, *s.* splendour, 630, 1940.
 PRYSE, *adj.* prize, choice, 1111.
 QUERE, *s.* choir, 3138, 3902, 3910.
 QUEST(E), *s.* judicial inquiry, 919, 925, 1320.
 QUITE, *adj.* free, 490.
 QYTTES, *pres.* 3 *s.* requites, repays, 2292.
 RADDE. See REDE.
 RANDOWNE, *s.* onrush, pace, 2750, 2888.
 RAP(P)E, *v.* hasten, 2664; *pres. subj.* 2 *pl.* 3613.
 RAUGHT, *pret.* 3 *s.* started, 3191.
 RAYED, *pret.* 3 *s.* arrayed, 2720, 3306.
 RAYKE, *v.* charge, rush, 3373.
 RAYLED, *p.p.* adorned, 3531.
 RAYNE, *s.* kingdom, 1980, 3223.
 REAS(S)E, RES(S)E, *s.* rush, attack, 1861, 1957, 2690, 2905, 3258; expedition, pilgrimage, 2664.
 REDE, *s.* counsel, advice, 907, 1113.
 REDE, *pres.* 1 *s.* counsel, say, direct, 168, 232, 233, 855, 978, 2839, 3427; *pres. subj.* 3 *s.* 1745; *pret.* 2 *s.* RADDE, 3430; rule, 1416, 2311 (*infin.*); read, 2956 (*pres.* 1 *s.*).
 RELEVE, *imperat.* 2 *pl.* recover, 3112.
 REME, *s.* realm, kingdom, 2512, 3666.
 RENNE, *v.* run, 3947.
 RESCOUS, *pres.* 3 *s.* rescues, 2227.
 RE(S)SEYVE, *v.* receive, 3688, 3708; *pret.* 3 *s.* RESSEYUYD, RESSEYVED, 3788, 3862; *pret.* 3 *pl.* RESEYVED, 572.
 RIGGE, *s.* back, 2178.
 RIGHT, *adj.* and *adv.* straight, 161, 620.
 RODE, *s.* rood, cross, 3851, 3882.
 RODE, *s.* redness, rosy colour, 179; *pl.* RODDYS, 3956.
 ROFFE, ROVE, *pret.* rived, split, 2909, 3372.
 ROMANS, *s.* romance, 2363.
 ROO, *s.* quiet, rest, 3614.
 ROUGHT, *pret.* 3 *s.* recked, 3522.
 ROWND, *adj.* favourable, 3805.
 ROWNE, *s.* speech, 3510.
 ROWNE, *v.* speak, 3423.
 RYCHE, *adj.* mighty (one), 2905, 3373.
 RYFFE, *adj.* rife, 1825.
 RYGTWOSSE, *adj.* righteous, 3740.
 SAD(D)E, *adj.* tired, 461, 716.
 SALOWES, SALUES, *pres.* 3 *s.* salutes, 68, 735, 737, 2376.
 SAMEN, *adv.* together, 2154, 2392.
 SAMYTE, *s.* samite, a rich silk stuff, 2358.
 SANGRAYLE, *s.* Holy Grail, 10.
 SANZFAYLE, *adv.* surely, indeed, 971.
 SARE, *adv.* sorely, 158, 272.
 SAUMBUES, *s.* *pl.* housings, 2360.
 SAWES, *s.* *pl.* speeches, sayings, 1151, 3251.
 SAYNE, *v.* say, 3319; *p.p.* said, declared, 2872.
 SCAUBERKE, *s.* scabbard, 3471, 3474.
 SCRYVED, *pret.* 3 *pl.* burst, 382; *p.p.* 407.
 SE(E), SEY, *pret.* saw, 741, 1476, 3181, 3417, 3624.
 SECHE, *v.* seek, 437, 3021, 3799.
 SEE, *s.* seat, 2693.
 SEKE, *adj.* sick, 54, 158, 173, 525, 664, 2165.
 SEKERESTE, *adj.* most trustworthy, 2518.
 SEKERYD, *pret.* 3 *pl.* confirmed, 2331.
 SEKERYNGE, *s.* assurance, guarantee, 2322.
 SELY, *adv.* very, 3387, 3835.
 SEMBLANT, *s.* appearance, 659.
 SEMELY, *adj.* beautiful (one), 639.
 SENGLE, *adv.* uniquely, 1795.
 SENTE, *s.* opinion, consent, 2278.
 SETHE, *conj.* since, 2903. See SITHE.
 SEY. See SE(E).
 SHENDE, *s.* shame, 1664.
 SHENDE, SHENT(E), *p.p.* put to shame, disgraced, 1321, 2273, 2913, 3230; lost, 1724.
 SHENE, *adj.* bright, beautiful, 51, 68, 1515, 1657, 1800, 2384, 2612, 3338.
 SHO, *pers. pron.* she, 1426.
 SHORE, *p.p.* taken, 84.
 SHOURE, *s.* attack, 3000.

- SHREDDE, *v.* cut, 2563.
 SHYNAND, *pres. part.* shining, 973.
 SIGHE, *pret.* saw, 706, 998.
 SITHE, SYTHE, *adv.* afterwards, 398, 451, 546, 1336, 3792.
 SITHE, *conj.* since, 126, 209, 234, 557, 745, 753.
 SITHEN, *adv.* afterwards, then, 614.
 SITTE, *s.* unhappiness, 497; *pl.* SYTTES, calamities, 870.
 SLAE, SLE, *v.* slay, 843, 2115, 2507, 2579, 2601.
 SLEE, *adj.* sly, cunning, 3421.
 SLO(O), *v.* strike, slay, 1411, 1527, 1841, 2100, 2188, 2825. See SLAE.
 SNELLE, *adj.* quick, active, 884, 2234; *adv.* quickly, 790.
 SOKEBYNGE, *s.* comforting, 3674.
 SO(U)ND, *s.* message, that which is sent, 3562, 3675.
 SONE, *adv.* soon, 930, 963.
 SOTH(E), *s.* truth, 60, 93, 226, 396, 771, 3798.
 SOUGHT, *pret. pl.* went, journeyed, 2952; *p.p.* pierced, 870, 2873.
 SOUND. See So(U)ND.
 SOWNE, *s.* speech, utterance, 3514.
 SPELLE, *v.* talk, 3024, 3722.
 SPERYD, *pret.* 3 *s.* shut, 2997.
 SPILLE, *v.* become empty, 23.
 SPRENT(E), *pret.* sprang, 1846, 1892, 1949, 1954, 1994, 3357.
 STAD, *p.p.* placed (with sense of discomfort, oppression), 3226, 3627.
 STEDE, *s.* place, 851.
 STENT(E), *v.* delay (*intrans.*), 3936; *pret.* 3 *pl.* stopped, 1844; *p.p.* 3080.
 STERT(E), *v.* spring, 3278; *pret.* 3 *s.* 2740, 2789, 3352.
 STEUEN, STEVYN, *s.* voice, 2584, 3411, 3821, 3875, 3967.
 STODE, *s.* support, sustenance, 3621.
 STOMELYD, *pret.* 3 *s.* stumbled, 115.
 STORNNELY, *adv.* sternly, 2549.
 STOUND(E), STOWND, *s.* time, short while, 1959, 2549, 2865, 3066.
 STOURE, STOWRE, *s.* conflict, struggle, battle, 236, 655, 1811, 2288, 2741, 3036, 3893.
 STRAUGHT, *pret.* 3 *s.* stretched himself, put forth his strength, 2814.
 STRONGE, *adj.* difficult, 3833.
 STRYFFE, *adj.* sharp, keen, 1829.
 STYNT(E), *v.* stop, 3246 (*trans.*), 3947 (*intrans.*). See STENTE.
 SWEUYS, SWEYNEYS, *s. pl.* dreams, 3170, 3226.
 SWITHE, SWYTHE, *adj.* very, 246; quickly (frequently with pleonastic *as, also*), 79, 394, 531, 674, 700, 996, 1477, 1481.
 SWONNE, *s.* swoon, 3728.
 SWOUGHE, *s.* swoon, 903, 1634.
 SWOUGHE? 875.
 SWYTHE. See SWITHE.
 SY(GH)E, *pret.* saw, 2800, 3105, 3201, 3618, 3749.
 SYKER, *adj.* assured, 2333; safe, 2741.
 SYNE, *conj.* since, 3684.
 SYTHE, *s.* time, 696; occasion, 1561; *pl.* SITHES, 774.
 SYTHE, *adv.* afterwards. See SITHE.
 SYTHEN, *adj.* afterwards, then, 1530, 1700, 2660. See SITHEN.
 SYTTES. See SITTE.
 TASE, *pres.* 3 *s.* takes, 956.
 TE, *v.* draw, come, 965, 1015.
 TELDE, *s.* tent, 2624; *pl.* TELDYS, 2725.
 TELLE, *conj.* till, 3656.
 TENE, *s.* anger, 1449.
 TENE, *v.* become vexed, 281.
 TENT, *pret.* 3 *s.* paid attention to, 3946.
 THAN, *adv.* then, 1461, 2876, 2944, 3528.
 THAR(E), *pres.* 3 *s.* need (*impersonal*), 2028, 2338, 2426; *pres.* 2 *s.* (*personal*), 3285.
 THE, *person. pron.* they, 1893.
 THEDE, *s.* people, 1415; country, 61, 2305, 2361.
 THEDYR, *adv.* thither, 3751.
 THEIGHE, *conj.* though, 1985.
 THEREOF, *adv.* therefrom, 1038.
 THEWIS, *s. pl.* manners, 1081.
 THINKITH, THYNKITH, *pres.* 3 *s.* seems, 635, 768; *pret.* 3 *s.* THOUGHT, 3829.
 THO(O), *demonstr. pron. pl.* those, 352, 448, 1151, 1942, 3079, 3402.
 THO(O), *adv.* then, 186, 249, 313, 976, 1020, 1112, 1341, 2854, 3749, 1526.
 THORE, *adv.* there, 2005, 2388, 3284, 3480.
 THOUGHT TO, *p.p.* intended for, 1655.

THRO(o), *adj.* hard, bold, fierce, 589, 1526, 2184, 2389, 2879, 2942, 3328.
 THREYE, *adv.* thrice, 383.
 THRYVE, *p.p.* excellent, strong, 589.
 TIDANDIS, TYDANDIS, -ES, *s. pl.* tidings, 703, 710, 767.
 TILLE, TYLLE, *prep.* to, 191, 637, 817, 1771, 1780, 1786.
 TITHANDIS, TYTHANDIS, -YS, *s. pl.* tidings, 542, 1984, 2015, 2328.
 TITHINGIS, *s. pl.* tidings, 641.
 TO, *conj.* until, 374, 3437.
 TO-FORNE, *adv.* before, 3608.
 TOKE, *pret.* 3 s. gave, 2713.
 TONE, *def. art.* + *numeral*, the one, 2797, 3253, 3384, 3710.
 TRIACLE, *s.* antidote to poison, sovereign remedy, 864.
 TRONCHON, *s.* handle, 3071.
 TRONE, *s.* throne, 3789, 3944.
 TWIGHT, *pret.* 3 s. twitched, took, 1038.
 TWYNNE, *numeral*, two, 2211.
 TYDE, *s.* time, 54, 241, 365, 834, 2081, 3834.
 TYLLE. See TILLE.
 VNDYR-TYME, *s.* morning, 2807.
 VNFAYNE, *adj.* unhappy, 2691.
 VN-HEND(E), *adj.* ungentle, unkind, 1001, 1081.
 VNKOUTH, *adj.* unknown, foreign, 851.
 VNNETH(E), *adv.* hardly, 2820, 2857.
 VN-SAD, *adj.* not satiated, 1508.
 VNSAUGHT, *p.p.* insane, 3189.
 VN(SO)NDE, VNSOWNDE, *adj.* ill, 2859, 3343, 3387.
 VNTYLLE, *prep.* to, 3858.
 VOUTE, *s.* vault, dome, 972.
 WAITES, WAYTES, *pres.* 3 s. watches, 74, 1779.
 WAKE, *v.* keep vigils, 3571; watch, 2605; *pres. subj.* 1 *pl.* 2591.
 WARNE, *v.* prevent, 3011, 3040 (?).
 WARYNGE, *s.* warring, 2975.
 WAWES, *s. pl.* waves, 3465.
 WEDE, *s.* apparel, armour, 83, 176, 778, 2639.
 WEDE, *v.* rave, be mad, 651, 787, 914.
 WEDRES, *s. pl.* weather, 2470.
 WELDE, *v.* wield, control, 101; rule, 920, 2917.
 WELE, *s.* joy, 3788.

MORTE ARTHUR.

WELLUETTE, *s.* velvet, 2615.
 WENE, *s.* doubt, question, 548, 1680, 1758, 1822, 2546.
 WENGE, *v.* avenge, 2217.
 WENTE. See WENYS.
 WENTE, *pret.* 3 s. turned, 1349.
 WENYS, *pres.* 3 s. weens, thinks, 686; *pret.* 3 s. WENDE, WENTE, 422, 865, 3054, 3795.
 WERE, *v.* wear, 2791; *pret.* 3 s. WERYD, 3030.
 WERRYNGE, 2932. See WARYNGE.
 WESSCHE, *pret.* 3 *pl.* washed, 2855.
 WET(T)E, *v.* know, 1005, 1039, 1717, 2543, 3919; *imperat.* 2 s. 2303; *imperat.* 2 *pl.* 2600.
 WETTERLYE, WYTTYERLY, *adv.* surely, 1381, 1452.
 WEXE, *pret.* 3 s. grew, 762, 951; *p.p.* WEXYN, grown, 2207.
 WHAN, *conj.* when, 1367, 3304.
 WHEDYR, *adv.* whither, 3512, 3513, 3603.
 WHERE, *conj.* whether, 1987.
 WIGHT, WYGHTE, *s.* person, 577, 608; thing (especially strengthening the negative = not at all), 107, 472, 915, 1377.
 WIGHT, *adj.* strong, active, 460.
 WIGHT(E)LY, WYGHTELY, *adv.* with strength, might, 2822; quickly, 513, 3289.
 WIS, *imperat.* 2 s. direct, 3414.
 WISELICHE, *adv.* certainly, 1158.
 WIST(E), WYSTE, *pret.* knew (how), 8, 119, 128, 189, 435, 529, 1537, 2499, 3539; *p.p.* 1148.
 WITE, WYTE, *v.* blame, reproach with, 492, 1153, 2880; *pres.* 2 s. WITESTE, 2398.
 WITHE, *prep.* by, 1778.
 WLLE, *pres.* 1 s. will, 2592.
 WODE, *adj.* mad, 384, 662, 1172, 1710, 1994, 2841.
 WOKYS, *s. pl.* weeks, 2111.
 WOLDE, *s.* subjection, control, 745, 3233.
 WOLLE, *pres.* 1 s. will, 1495.
 WONDYD, *p.p.* wounded, 3434.
 WONE, *s.* abundance, 1083.
 WONNE, *s.* dwelling, habitation, 3377.
 WONNYNG, *s.* dwelling, 3561.
 WO(U)NYD, *pret.* dwelt, 137, 332, 3636.

L

- WOODELY, *adv.* madly, wildly, 3191.
 WORCHE, *v.* work, 3683.
 WORSHIP(PE), WORSHYP(PE), *s.* honour, reputation, 35, 1152, 2845, 2933.
 WORSHIPPED, -ID, *p.p.* shown honour to, 1551, 1569.
 WORSHIPFULLY, *adv.* with honour, 1117.
 WORTHE, *v.* become, 1817; *pres.* 3 *s.* WORTHIS, gets, 782.
 WORTHE, WORTHY, *adj.* worthy, strong, 2545, 2559.
 WOUGHE, *s.* trouble, evil, wo, 1333, 1365, 1638.
 WOUND, *v.* wend, go, 2863.
 WOUNDE, *v.* hesitate, 1070, 3558.
 WOUNT, *pret.* 3 *s.* was wont, 26.
 WRAKE, *s.* rack, ruin, 1695, 3567; trouble, suffering, 935, 948, 1092, 1181; vengeful spirit, 1451; mischief, 1675.
 WYKKE, *adj.* severe, 3365.
 WYLANLYCHE, *adj.* villainously, 1156.
 WYNNE, *s.* joy, 3788.
 WYNNE, *v.* to come, 1830.
 WYTTIRLY. See WETTERLYE.
 WYTHSAYNE, *v.* gainsay, deny, 2406.
 YA, *adv.* yea, 79, 1626.
 YARE, *adj.* ready, 218, 349, 1420, 2702; *adv.* quickly, 983, 3536.
 YAT, *s.* gate, 2864; *pl.* YATES, 2743.
 YEDE, *pret.* went, 81, 346, 667, 986, 1331, 2280, 3952.
 YEFF(E), YEUE, *v.* give, 2728, 3267, 3275; *pres. subj.* 3 *s.* YEFFE, YIFFE, 2643, 3671; *imperat.* 2 *s.* YIF, 3554; *pret.* YAFE, YAFF(E), 269, 2815, 2963; *p.p.* YEVE, 88.
 YIF(E), YIFF(E), *conj.* if, 199, 1627, 1709, 2077.
 Y₃EN, *s. pl.* eyes, 1349.
 YLKE, *adj.* same, 54, 366, 1934, 3639. See ILKE.
 YO(O)DE, *pret.* went, 307, 1858, 2876, 3108, 3751; ran, 962, 3935.
 YOLDE, *pret.* 1 *s.* yielded, surrendered, 2308; *p.p.* YOLDEN, 2797.
 YVELLE, *adj.* difficult, 619.

INDEX OF PROPER NAMES.

N.B. All the variant forms of a name are given, but no attempt has been made to render the references for each form exhaustive.

- Aggrawayne, 1718, 1764, 1910, 1916; Agravayne, 73; Agraveyne, 59; Agrawayne, 1676, 1692, 1728, 1832.
- Arthur, 88, 337, 640, 955, 1048, 1681, 2388, 3082, 3964; Arthure, 1096, 1934, 2070, 2500; *gen.* Arthur, 5, 3346; Arthurs, 260, 2965; Arthuris, 3157, 3776.
- Ascalot, 548, 747, 1054; Ascalote, 1011; Ascolot, 138, 297, 645, 1136; Ascolote, 1135.
- Avelovne, 3516.
- Avmysbery, 3569, 3954.
- Barendowne, 3094, 3592.
- Bannemagew, 2564.
- Bedwere, 3386, 3400, 3519, 3758.
- Benwike, 2305, 2474; Benwyk, 2707; Benwyke, 2534.
- Boert, 230, 464; Boerte, 273, 432; Boerte de Gawnes, 788; Bors, 1344, 1443, 1888, 2214, 3607, 3808, 3921; Bors de Gawnes, 1326, 1772, 2084, 2548, 2746, 3802.
- Bretayne, 3376, 3553; *gen.* Bretaynes, 2513.
- Canterbery, 3002, 3119; Canturbury, 2982; Caunterbery, 3019.
- Cornwale, 3267; Cornwayle, 3275, 3295.
- Cryste, 3004.
- Douer, 3589; Dover, 3042, 3794; Dower, 3055.
- Ector, 299, 436, 789, 3807, 3946; Estor, 1327, 1394, 2492.
- Engelond, 2435. See Yngland.
- Evwayn, 129; Evwayne, 107, 230, 265, 408; Evway[n]e, 106.
- Excaliber, 3448.
- Fraunce, 2486.
- Gaheriet, 1674, 1722, 1940, 1979; Gahereit, 1987; Gaheryet, 1931, 2020, 2025.
- Gaheries, 1940, 2020; Gaheryes, 1722, 1931; Gaherys, 1935.
- Galehod, 43, 225; Galehud, 2587; Galyhud, 2572; *gen.* Galehodie, 261.
- Gawayn, 824, 1041, 2751; Gawayne, 536, 600, 1115, 1720, 2218, 3593; Gaweyn, 570; Gaweyne, 576, 626; *gen.* Gawayne, 2899.
- Gawle, 2487.
- Gawnes, 2484; Gawneys, 1422.
- Gaynor, 3566; Gaynore, 421; Gaynour, 3600, 3965; Genure, 515, 835, 901, 936.
- Glassynbery, 3960.
- Ihesu, 2642, 3562, 3894, 3968; Ihesu Criste, 534, 861; Ihesu Cryst, 2475; Ihesu Cryste, 1974, 2074, 3940; *gen.* Ihesu, 3929.
- Ioyes Garde, 3845, 3901; Ioyus Gard, 2044, 2345, 2460; Ioyus Garde, 1669, 2079, 2110.
- Kamelot, 420.
- Karlytt, 2349; Karllyle, 2257, 2327.
- Kelyon, 2466; Kerlyonne, 2529.
- Kente, 2982, 3019, 3295.
- Lancelot, 2916, 3590, 3884; Lance-
lot du lake, 1614, 3962; Launce-
lot, 53, 543, 1596, 2142, 3574,
3823; Launcelot de lake, 2589,
2640; Launcelot du lake, 629,
1410, 2779; Launcelote, 1682,
1945; Launcelote du lake, 1094;

- Launcelott, 27, 81, 178, 1099; Northe Gales, 2580.
 Launcelotte, 233, 706; *gen.*
 Launcelot, 2237; Launcelotis,
 2046, 2329; Launcelottis, 594, 598.
 London, 2992, 2996, 3800.
 Lionelle, 1459; Lyonett, 3797; Ly-
 onelle, 230, 432, 788, 1536, 2486.
 Lucan, 2636, 3436; Lucan de bote-
 ler, 3232, 3416; Lucan de botelere,
 3384; Lucan de bottelere, 2631;
 Lucane de botteler, 2695.
 Mador, 883, 1449, 1644.
 Mary, 3410; *gen.* Mary-is, 3863.
 Mordred, 2518, 2998, 3228, 3560;
 Mordreit, 1862, 1904, 1908, 2522;
 Mordreite, 1675.
 Rome, 2248.
 Rowchester, 2255.
 Salisbury, 3148; Salysbery, 3597.
 Sangrayle, 10.
 Scottis, 2099.
 Walys, 2099, 3147.
 Wynchester, 42, 340, 2984.
 Yngland, 347, 2261, 2958, 3263;
 Ynglande, 2249, 2268; Ynglonde,
 2098, 2273.
 Yreland, 2098.

—

Stanford University Libraries



3 6105 005 674 978

820.6

E12c

Stanford University Libraries
Stanford, California

Return this book on or before date due.

JUN 7 1978

MAY 22 '88

JUN 23 1978

MAR -4 1978

MAR 27 1978

JUL 30 1975

JUL 11 1988
DEC JAN 28 1992

MAY 22 1986

OCT 10 1991

